

GAGE & CO'S
EDUCATIONAL SERIES.




CÆSAR
BELLUM BRITANNICUM

ROBERTSON.



J. M. Robertson



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

<http://www.archive.org/details/caesarbellumbrit00robe>



CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR.

(From a Bust in the Paris Louvre.)

The W. J. Gage Co.'s Classical Series.

CAESAR, BELLUM BRITANNICUM,

(BEING BOOK IV. CHAP. 20-38 AND BOOK V. CHAP. 1-23
OF THE BELLUM GALLICUM)

WITH

*Introduction, Notes, Maps and Illustrations, Appendices with
Hints and Exercises on Translation at Sight and on
Re-translation into Latin, and a Complete
Vocabulary to Caesar.*

BY

J. C. ROBERTSON, B.A.,

Lecturer in Greek, Victoria University, Toronto.

TORONTO :
THE W. J. GAGE COMPANY (LTD.)
1895.

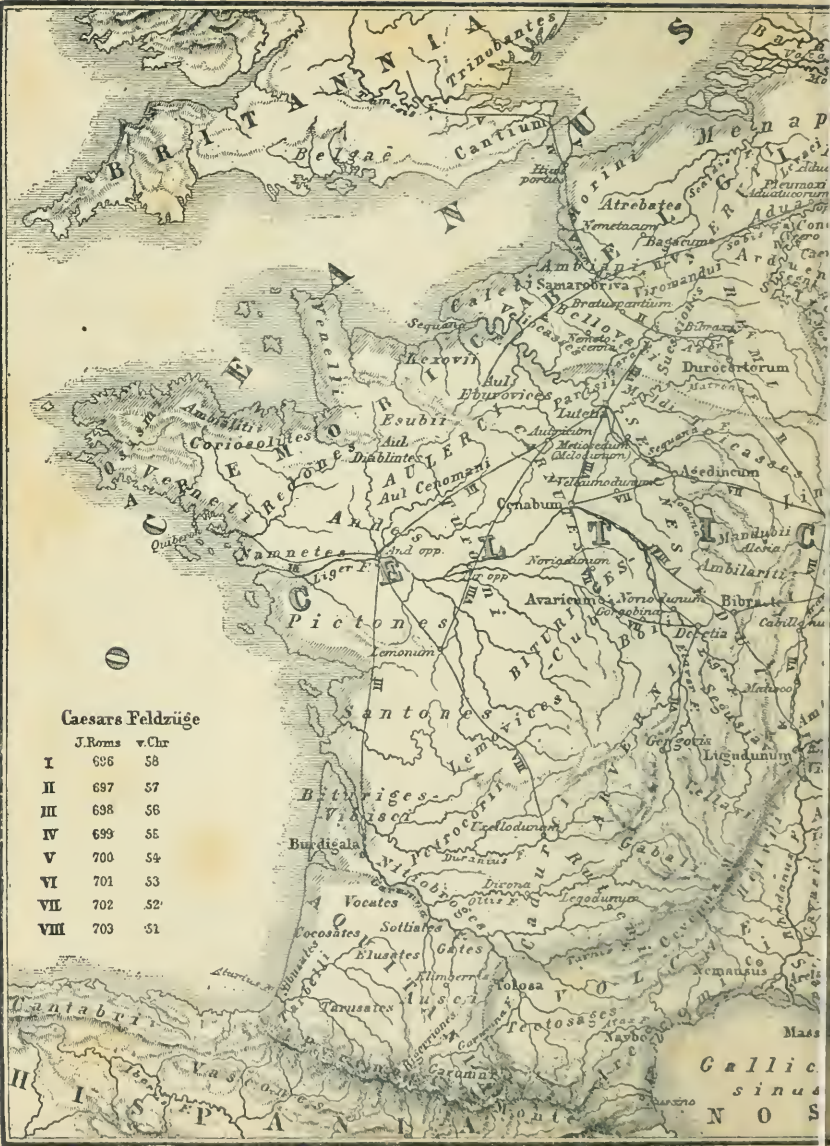
Entered, according to Act of Parliament, in the Office of the Minister
of Agriculture, in the year of our Lord 1895, by THE W. J. GAGE CO'Y
(LTD.), Toronto.

PREFACE.

THIS edition of that portion of Caesar's Gallic War commonly known as the *Bellum Britannicum* is intended to meet the requirements of the new regulations of the Education Department and the altered character of the Primary Examination in Latin. The annotations (which have been re-written for this edition) are for beginners in the reading of connected prose, and will, it is trusted, help them to gain a real and useful knowledge of the language they are trying to master as a ready instrument for future use, and not merely to prepare a translation of the text for class recitation.

To test and develop the ability to use the knowledge thus acquired, copious exercises (carefully prepared and graded) have been added in both Sight-translation and Re-translation into Latin. Attention is called also to the new section of the Introduction bearing specially on the expeditions to Britain, and to the collection of noteworthy points of grammar in the text. It must, of course, be remembered that this book, like most text-books, is simply a collection of material, and cannot possibly take the place of the actual teacher. It may, however, enable him to extend the scope of his class-work, and it is hoped that the exercises, in particular, will save many hours of labor, and thus make room for more, and better, real teaching.

TORONTO, July 19, 1895.



Caesars Feldzüge

	J.Roms	v.Chr
I	686	58
II	687	57
III	698	56
IV	699	55
V	700	54
VI	701	53
VII	702	52
VIII	703	51

Callic
sinus
N O S



INTRODUCTION.

- § I. LIFE OF CÆSAR.
 - § II. GAUL AND THE GAULS.
 - § III. CÆSAR'S CAMPAIGN IN GAUL.
 - § IV. THE COMMENTARIES OF CÆSAR.
 - § V. THE ARMY AND METHODS OF WARFARE.
 - § VI. CÆSAR'S EXPEDITIONS TO BRITAIN.
-

I.—LIFE OF CÆSAR.

AT the time of Cæsar's birth Rome had become mistress of all the lands bordering on the Mediterranean, so that foreign wars of conquest had virtually ceased, and during his boyhood commenced that struggle for supremacy in the State called the civil wars. This was at first a contest between the aristocratic and the popular party, but, as time went on, it became practically a struggle between individuals for personal supremacy.

Caius Julius Cæsar was born in 100 B.C. (or, as the historian

Mommsen holds, in 102 B.C.), of one of the oldest of the patrician or aristocratic families of Rome. The family was, however, closely connected by marriage with the great popular leader Marius, and Cæsar himself in 83 married the daughter of Cinna, Marius' leading supporter. His sympathies were thus from the first with the popular party, and on the defeat of that party by Sulla in 82, he barely escaped with his life.

For several years after this Cæsar served in the Roman army in Asia Minor, returning to Rome after Sulla's death in 78. At first he devoted himself to public oratory in the law courts, and in 76 went to Rhodes to study rhetoric under the famous teacher Molo. For several years after his return to Rome in 74 he busied himself in strengthening his position with his party, and soon came to be looked on as one of its leaders. The senatorial party was at this time supreme, and Cæsar had to win his way to power gradually. He went through the various grades of office by which Roman citizens rose to the rank of Consul, being in succession Quaestor, Curule Aedile, and Praetor. In 63 he was elected Pontifex Maximus, becoming technically the head of the Roman religion. This success over the aristocratic party showed clearly that its power was waning, and that Cæsar was now one of the leaders of the Roman state.

In 61, immediately after his Praetorship, he went to Spain as Propraetor or Military Governor. Here, in his first command, he at once showed his ability as a general, in quelling the rebellious native tribes. His manner of living at Rome (for he was not only one of the ablest but one of the most dissolute of men during the earlier period of his manhood), and the means by which he had obtained office and ingratiated himself with the people, had plunged him heavily into debt. But the Governor of a Roman province had plenty of opportunities for enriching himself at the expense of the provincials, and one year in Spain freed him from all his debts, as well as making him known as a brilliant commander.

In 60 he returned to the city and was elected Consul for 59, with a colleague of the aristocratic party, who was, however, too weak and insignificant to be able to thwart his measures.

The three leading men of Rome at this time were Pompey, representing the nobles; Cæsar, the leader of the popular party; and Crassus, whose influence was largely due to his immense wealth. Cæsar persuaded the other two to form a coalition with him, and thus get the practical supremacy of the state in their own hands. In the end this bargain proved to be entirely to Cæsar's advantage, as it prevented any active opposition to him during the next few years while he was absent from Rome securing for himself experience, prestige, and a veteran army to assist him when the final struggle for supremacy came. For one of the results of the coalition was that Cæsar was appointed for five years (58 to 51) governor of Illyricum and the two Gauls, Cisalpine and Transalpine, (the former being the northern part of Italy above the peninsula proper, and the latter the southern part of France). In 55 this command was extended for another period of five years, by an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who were consuls that year.

For eight years (58 to 51) he was engaged in the conquest of Gaul. At the end of that time the whole of Gaul, from the Rhine to the Pyrenees, had been subjugated and made part of the Roman empire, and Cæsar had an army of experienced and devoted veterans, such as the Roman state had never before witnessed. Crassus had fallen in battle in the far East, and Cæsar and Pompey remained to compete for absolute supremacy in Rome, Pompey having the somewhat lukewarm support of the Senate and the aristocratical party.

Civil war soon arose from the jealousy between these two rivals, and in 49 Cæsar advanced with his legions into Italy. Pompey was not ready to oppose him, and crossed to Greece where the Senatorial party gathered its forces. Meanwhile Cæsar hastened to Spain, where Pompey had strong supporters,

and quickly reduced them to submission. Returning to Rome he was made Consul for 48 and then crossed over to Greece. After a short summer campaign Pompey was decisively defeated at Pharsalia, and fleeing to Egypt was assassinated there.

After short campaigns in Syria and Asia Minor (47) and Africa (46), in which all remaining opposition was crushed, Caesar returned to Rome and occupied himself in securing his power and settling affairs of state, surprising many by the clemency he showed to those who had lately opposed him.

Pompey's sons meanwhile had raised a revolt in Spain, but this was speedily crushed in the spring of 45.

Caesar was now practically (though not nominally) supreme ruler of the Roman world, and it seemed as though under the absolute rule of so brilliant an administrator there would now be lasting peace and prosperity. But a conspiracy to assassinate him was formed by a number of eminent Romans, actuated some by jealousy, others by an honest but short-sighted desire to bring back republican freedom, and in 44 B.C., on the 15th (the Ides) of March, he fell, pierced with the daggers of his murderers, at the base of Pompey's statue.

The result was that the struggle for supremacy was soon renewed, and terminated only when, fourteen years later, Caesar's nephew (Octavianus, or Augustus) became sole ruler of the Roman world and established the empire of the Cæsars.

"In person, Caesar was tall and slenderly built, his face rather long and thin, his eyes black, vivacious, and keen, his nose prominent, of the Roman type, his head somewhat bald in later life."—*Allen and Greenough*.

"His powers and genius were simply astonishing, a brilliant leader, a skilful engineer, a profound jurist, a scientific astronomer, an eloquent orator and accomplished poet—there was no region, practical or theoretical, in which he did not travel with the greatest success."—*Walpole*.

II.—GAUL AND THE GAULS.

LONG before Cæsar's time the Gauls had come into collision with the Romans. Before Rome's power extended over more than the immediate neighborhood of the city, large numbers of Gauls had crossed the Alps and occupied the whole of the northern portion of Italy. By the beginning of the fourth century B.C. they had made their way down into Central Italy, and in 390 laid Rome in ashes. For more than a century Rome was almost constantly engaged in wars with the neighboring tribes and states of Italy, and in many of these wars the Gauls of Central and Northern Italy, either alone or in alliance with the Etruscans and Samnites, were opposed to Rome. In 283 a crushing defeat was inflicted on the Gauls, and until 225 there was no more trouble with them. By that time Rome had gained secure possession of the whole peninsula. By the end of 224 she had conquered the country of the Gauls south of the river Po, and in two years more had extended her power to the Alps. The district extending from the Alps to the peninsula was formed into a province called Gallia Citerior, or Cisalpina, being politically quite distinct from the peninsula, Italy proper.

The first steps towards the conquest of Transalpine Gaul were taken in 154, when a Roman army crossed the Alps to repel an attack by the Gauls on two coast-settlements subject to Massilia (Marseilles), a city which had been founded near the mouth of the Rhone by Greek traders, and which had formed an alliance with Rome. In 125 these attacks were again renewed, and again the Romans interfered, and after several years fighting, in which the Romans defeated the leading tribes of the southern part of Gaul, they became masters of the whole territory extending from the eastern end of the Pyrenees to the Alps, with the exception of Massilia, which still remained independent but in alliance with the Romans. Colonies were planted and the district organized into a pro-

vince,—the ‘*Provincia*’ of Cæsar—called *Gallia Transalpina*, or at a later period *Gallia Narbonensis*.

Until Cæsar’s time no further extension of territory was made by the Romans. The rest of Gaul was inhabited by a large number of independent tribes of similar origin and language, with the exception of the south-western part inhabited by the Aquitani, who were of a different race and akin to the Spaniards, and the north-eastern portion belonging to the Belgæ, who were largely of German extraction.

In 113 an invading host of Cimbri entered Gaul from the east. These fierce warriors swept everything before them in Gaul, and in 109 came in collision with the Romans, completely defeating their forces under the Consul Silanus. A portion of the Helvetians, called the Tigurini, pressed southward to join the invasion, and in 107 defeated the Consul Lucius Cassius, and in 105 a third defeat was sustained by the Consul Mallius. There was great alarm in Rome, for the barbarian hordes were threatening Italy, and another host, of Teutoni, had also appeared on the scene. These latter were, however, defeated in 102 by Marius in the province, and the next year the Cimbri, who had crossed the Alps into Cisalpine Gaul, were completely routed by Catulus.

This invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri and Teutoni seems to have paved the way for Cæsar’s conquest, by weakening the tribes and breaking up the strong confederacies that had existed.

For some years the only disturbance that arose in Gaul was the revolt, quickly suppressed, of the Allobroges, a tribe in the north of the province. This was in 61, and about that time there came other disquieting news.

The independent tribes of Gauls, lying to the north of the province, were divided into two leagues, headed, the one by the Ædui, the other by the Arverni and Sequani. The former were in alliance with Rome, and to offset this the Arverni and Sequani had a few years before invoked the aid of some of the German tribes living just across the Rhine. These were only too ready

to get a footing in Gaul, and soon the Sequani found that their new allies were fast becoming their masters. Further, in 60 the Helvetii, living in what is now known as Switzerland, began to prepare for a wholesale emigration into the more pleasant country of south-western Gaul.

The Romans' experience of the Gauls in Italy, and the more recent terror caused by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutoni made them feel alarm at these extensive and threatening movements of population. The Helvetians' route would lie close to the province, and it was hazardous to allow the Germans to become firmly established in Gaul. The Romans did not at once, however, respond to the Ædui's request for aid, but seem to have preferred to keep on good terms with Ariovistus, the German leader, till the moment for action came.

Matters were in this position when Cæsar in 58 assumed the governorship of the three Roman provinces, Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Transalpina (or *Provincia* as he generally calls it), and Illyricum.

Of these he depended mainly on the first for troops and supplies. It was practically part of Italy, as populous and nearly as wealthy and prosperous as the peninsula to the south. Gallia Transalpina had not yet been so thoroughly assimilated, and, with the exception of the neighborhood of the colonies and trading cities on the coasts, doubtless differed little from "Free Gaul" to the north and west.

"The Gauls were an intellectual and prosperous people, far more civilized than either Germans or Britons. The country, though extensively covered with forests, especially towards the north, was well provided with roads and bridges. The entire population has been reckoned at about seven millions. The people of the Gallic race were tall, fair-complexioned, of restless sanguine temperament, and addicted to fighting, but skilled in many arts. . . . They had numerous flourishing cities, which, however, had no political or corporate character like those of

Greece and Italy, but were merely places of residence and trade.

"The Gauls were not a nation, but a group of nations or tribes, about sixty in number, . . . the smaller ones often maintaining only a nominal independence under the protection of some larger one. They were for the most part ruled by a turbulent and oppressive aristocracy, sometimes with an elected chief magistrate, while sometimes an ambitious leader succeeded in establishing for a time a kingly power.

"The Britons were, like the Gauls, of Celtic race, and resembling them in every respect, except that living further from the civilized world, they were ruder, freer, and more warlike.

"The Germans, less advanced in civilization than the Gauls, were still far from being savages. They appear to have been just emerging from what is known as the barbarous state,—beginning to acquire fixed habitations, and to cultivate the ground; they had no cities."—*Allen and Greenough*.

III.—CÆSAR'S CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL*

I.—B.C. 58. Cæsar, hearing in Rome that the Helvetii are on the eve of setting out on their projected emigration (see page ix), hastens to Transalpine Gaul and there takes measures to prevent them from going through the province. They at first ask his permission to take this route, but failing to get it, try to force their way over the Rhone into the province. Cæsar repels them and they decide to take a more northerly and more difficult route. Cæsar at once obtains five legions from Cisalpine Gaul (there was but one in the Province), and follows them up on the ground that they were likely in their new home to prove dangerous neighbors to the province. He surprised and overcame one of their four divisions at the river

* On the large map of Gaul, the route taken in each campaign is indicated by a line marked with the numbers I, II, etc.



Arar, and soon after near Bibracte inflicts a crushing defeat on the remainder, and orders the survivors to return to the homes they had abandoned.

The presence of so large a body of troops and so successful a commander causes the leading men of several of the Gallic tribes to ask his assistance against Ariovistus and his German followers (see page viii.) Caesar undertakes the task, and at first tries argument and diplomacy, but in vain. The Roman soldiers are afraid to venture into unknown lands against so formidable an enemy as the Germans were reported to be, but Caesar calms their fears, and as soon as he can come to a decisive engagement with Ariovistus, completely routs the Germans and drives them back across the Rhine.

By this campaign the Roman influence was extended over the territory to the north of the province as far as the Treveri.

II.—B.C. 57. Caesar advances into the territory of the Belgae, who, with the exception of the Remi (who form an alliance with the Romans), combine to resist any attack on their country.

The combined forces meeting a repulse disband and Caesar advances farther into the country. Here he is surprised by the Nervii with some other tribes, and after a most desperate engagement, in which Caesar's inspiring example alone rallies the troops, the Nervii are driven back with immense loss.

After the siege of an important town in this neighborhood, which capitulates when the enemy perceive the efficiency of the Romans' siege artillery, several other tribes submit, and as a result of this second campaign Caesar's power extended from the Province northward to the English Channel and along the whole northern coast of Gaul as far as the Veneti.

III.—B.C. 56. During the winter Caesar sends one of his lieutenants to open up a new route between Italy and Gaul over the Alps, near the northern part of the Province, but the hill tribes offer such a resistance that the Romans are forced to retire. The tribes on the north-west coast of Gaul, headed

by the Veneti, combine to recover their liberty. The campaign is carried on along the coast, both by land and sea, and the Romans at last conquer the Veneti in a sea fight by a combination of ingenuity and good fortune.

Meanwhile Sabinus, a lieutenant of Cæsar, succeeded in quelling the revolt among the Venelli, and about the same time another lieutenant, Crassus, advanced southward into Aquitania, and after a hard fight against overwhelming odds came off victorious, and the different tribes of the Aquitani submitted to the Romans.

This campaign secured the results of the second year's work in the north-west of Gaul, while by the conquest of Aquitania the entire south from the Atlantic to the Alps acknowledged the Roman sway.

IV.—B.C. 55. For some time the growing power of the Suebi, a German tribe, had been oppressing the neighboring tribes, and at last the Usipetes and Tencteri resolve to cross the Rhine into Gaul. Cæsar advances to the Rhine, and after several conferences fights two battles with the invading Germans and repulses them. To prevent any further inroad, Cæsar builds a bridge across the Rhine, lays waste the lands of the Germans, and thus at once punishes and intimidates them.

He then resolves on making an expedition to Britain, which had close relations with the Belgæ, and for this purpose collects a fleet and sets sail in the early autumn. In the face of a stubborn resistance he effects a landing, and receives the submission of a few states. Heavy losses to the Roman fleet, caused by a storm and high tides, encourage these states to revolt again. A Roman legion is surprised, but the attack is repelled and soon after, owing the lateness of the season, Cæsar returns to Gaul without having ventured inland. On his return he puts down a rising of the Morini.

No new territory was added by this campaign, but the north-east of Gaul was rendered secure from German invasion and the sphere of Roman influence was extended to Britain.

V.—B.C. 54. With a larger fleet and stronger army than before, Cæsar again invades Britain and advances into the interior a little beyond the Thames. The native tribes combine against him, but are defeated and compelled to promise tribute. In the autumn Cæsar returns to Gaul, having made a display of his power and enterprise, but without adding any new territory.

On account of a drought and consequent scarcity of supplies in Gaul, the forces are divided for the winter into several portions and quartered among various tribes. The Gauls, who had been beaten but not subdued, take advantage of this to attack three of the camps. The garrison (a legion and a half) of one is lured from the camp, falls into an ambush and is annihilated. Another camp is besieged by the Nervii, but when reduced to the last extremity relieved by Cæsar. A third is attacked by the Treveri, who are however beaten back with severe loss. Affairs are in so desperate a condition that for the first time Cæsar spends the winter in Gaul instead of Italy.

VI.—B.C. 53. Cæsar, with three additional legions, sets about crushing out all resistance in Northern and North-eastern Gaul. A brief expedition is made across the Rhine into Germany to stop all interference with Gaul. The extreme north-east, where the legion and a half had been cut off the year before, is completely devastated and an invasion by the Sugambri (a German tribe) is repelled. This portion, at least, of Gaul has been now pretty effectually subdued.

VII.—B.C. 52. A general uprising of the central tribes of Gaul, joined even by the hitherto faithful Ædui, is headed by Vercingetorix, who on several occasions gains some advantage over Cæsar but is in the end overcome. The greater part of the fighting (including three noteworthy sieges) takes place in the country of the Arverni and the Ædui and the districts to the north. After the defeat and capture of Vercingetorix the different tribes are speedily reduced to submission.

VIII.—B.C. 51. (The story of this campaign is told by Aulus Hirtius). A few risings in various parts of Gaul are quelled, and Cæsar, having by the middle of 50 completed the conquest of Gaul, proceeds soon after to Italy and becomes engaged in civil war with Pompey.

IV.—THE COMMENTARIES OF CÆSAR.

Commentarii means sketches, jottings, memoirs, and 'Cæsar's Commentaries are memoirs written by himself, descriptive of his different campaigns, in which he treats of himself in the third person, and tells his story as it might have been told by some accompanying scribe or secretary.' That Cæsar himself was the author, is amply proved by the fact that his contemporaries ascribed it to him. It is uncertain whether it was written as the war went on and issued book by book, or whether it was composed towards the end of the war.

Each book contains the history of a single year's campaign. There are seven books in all, the history of the eighth year's operations having been composed after Cæsar's death by Aulus Hirtius, Cæsar being doubtless too busy preparing for the coming war with Pompey to find time for literary work.

As for the literary style of the Commentaries, the best judges among Cæsar's contemporaries praised it for its purity of diction and its business-like directness of expression. Cicero, the best literary critic of his day, writes of Cæsar's Commentaries, "I pronounce them to be, in fact, entirely commendable: for they are simple, straightforward, of a charming elegance, stripped of all rhetorical adornments;" and while speaking of them as intended not for a history but as materials for a history, says that their purity, brilliance and conciseness are such as to deter any man in his senses from attempting a history based on these materials.

Hirtius also bears witness to the ease and speed with which Cæsar wrote these books.

It should be borne in mind that Cæsar was one of the most

eloquent and polished orators of his day, and that he also gave attention to the rhetorical study of language, having written a work on the Latin language, from which Gellius quotes the advice, 'to shun an uncommon or out of the way word as a ship would a rock.'

An eminent modern writer says, "To us who love to make our language clear by the number of words used, and who in writing rarely give ourselves time for condensation, the closely-packed style of Cæsar is at first somewhat difficult of comprehension. It cannot be read otherwise than slowly till the reader's mind is trained by practice to Cæsarean expressions, and then not with rapidity.... Skipping is out of the question."

The only other work of Cæsar which has survived to us is a history of the war between him and Pompey, *Commentarii de Bello Civili*, in three books.

V.—THE ARMY AND METHODS OF WARFARE

(a) **The Roman Forces.** Cæsar's army consisted of (a) several legions of Roman soldiers, mostly enlisted in Gallia Cisalpina, (b) light-armed troops (slingers and archers), levied in some of the Roman provinces (Numidia, Crete and the Balearic islands are mentioned), and (c) auxiliary cavalry furnished by or levied from the native tribes in alliance with the Romans.

The legion (*legio*) consisted nominally of 5,000 or 6,000 men, in reality of about 3,000 or 4,000. Losses incurred in a campaign were not made up by adding recruits to the legion, thus impairing its efficiency, but when necessary, new legions were levied. Each legion was made up of ten cohorts (*cohors*), each cohort of three maniples or companies (*manipulus*), each maniple of two centuries (*centuria* or *ordo*), but the division into cohorts is the important one in Cæsar's time, the cohort being thus the unit of his army. The cavalry were divided

into squadrons (*turma*) and *decuriae*, each of uncertain size, the latter being the smaller.



(b) **Arms and Equipments.** The heavy armed soldier of the legion (*miles legionarius*), was equipped as follows :

Defensive armor. 1. The helmet (*galca*), of leather, to which were attached crests (*insignia*) to distinguish the soldiers of the different legions. 2. The cuirass (*lorica*), of leather with a small iron breast-plate. 3. The shield (*scutum*), oblong, 4 feet by $2\frac{1}{2}$, and half cylindrical, of wood covered with leather, with metal rims at the top and bottom. [N.B. —The round shield (*clipeus*) shown in the preceding cut had long before Cæsar's time been discarded for the oblong *scutum* shown in the accompanying cut.]*



* At an earlier time greaves (*ocreae*) had been worn, but they seem not to have been used in Cæsar's time.



Offensive armor. 1. The sword (*gladius*), about two feet long, straight and two-edged, for thrusting not for cutting down. It hung in a sheath (*vagina*) by a belt (*baltus*) on the right side, that the shield might not interfere with its being drawn. 2. The javelin (*pilum*), always used as a missile, not for thrusting, about six feet long with a wooden shaft and iron head.

The clothing of the soldier was a cloak (*sagum* or *sagulum*) reaching to the knee, under which was a tunic or shirt (*tunica*). A girdle or belt, and boots reaching half way to the knee completed the dress.

The light-armed soldiers (*miles levis armaturae*) had for their weapons of offense the bow and arrow (archers, *sagittarii*) or the sling (slingers, *funditores*). As a defense they seem to have used a small round shield.

(c) **Officers of the Army.** 1. The Commander-in-chief (*imperator*), who was at the same time governor of the province which formed the army's headquarters. 2. The staff officers, adjutants or lieutenants (*legatus*), appointed by the Roman senate, but practically chosen by the commander. Caesar had ten *legati*, who were often assigned to the temporary command of troops either in an engagement, in winter-quarters, or on expeditions sent out by him. 3. The paymaster-general (*quaestor*), who managed the finances of the province, and in war the payment of the soldiers and the sale of booty and prisoners of war. There was but one *quaestor* with the commander-in-chief, and he was now and then entrusted with a command. 4. The tribunes of the soldiers (*tribunus militum*), of whom there were six belonging to each legion. They were chosen probably by Caesar himself (though at an earlier period elected by the people) from young men of good birth (they belonged to the equestrian order), but generally of little military ability or experience. As a consequence they do not occupy a prominent position in the cam-

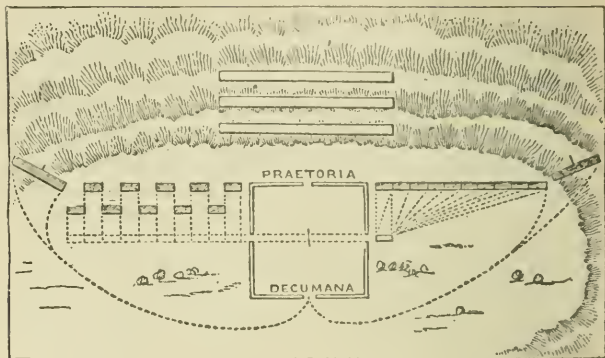
paign, being entrusted with the occasional command of small detachments or with some administrative duties. 5. The prefects or commanders (*præfectus*) were also of equestrian rank and were placed in command of the allied troops, for as a general thing the cavalry contributed by the native tribes was officered by Romans. 6. The centurions (*centurio*) were chosen from among the regular troops, there being 60 to each legion and six to each cohort. The centurions of a legion were not all of the same rank. There was a regular grade of promotion by which a centurion was advanced until he became the senior centurion of the legion (called *primipilus* or *primi pili centurio*.)^{*} The centurions were the ordinary officers of the legion upon whom depended mainly the efficiency of the troops. 7. The decurion or sub-commander of cavalry (*decurio*), occupying a position inferior to the *præfectus* and commanding a small detachment of cavalry.

(d) **The Camp.** "A Roman army never halted for the night without entrenching itself. Towards the end of the day's march a detachment was sent out in front to select a spot for encampment. A favorite site was the slope of a hill, especially if wood, water and grass were abundant in its neighborhood." The camp was square, the defenses consisting of a wall or rampart (*vallum*), and outside of this a trench or moat (*fossa*), from which much of the material for the wall was obtained. The tents (*tentoria*) of the soldiers were of skins (*pelles*). The camp had four gates (*porta*), those at the side being a little forward of the centre, and those in front (*i.e.* facing the enemy) and rear in the centre.† Before each gate

^{*} The name was given at an earlier period when the army was divided into maniples rather than cohorts, and into three ranks (*hastati*, *principes* and *triarii*, the last being the veterans.) Each maniple had two centurions (senior and junior, *prior* and *posterior*) and the chief centurion was the senior centurion of the first maniple of the *triarii*. The name *pilus* was given to a maniple of the *triarii*.

† This last mentioned gate, on the side most remote from the enemy, was called the *porta decumana*.

a picket or outpost (*statio*) was placed to guard against surprise.†



(e) **Baggage and Standards.** The heavy baggage (*impedimenta*), including the tents, hand mills for grinding corn and engines of war, were carried in wagons or on beasts of burden. Besides this each soldier had his pack (*sarcinae*) to carry. Besides his heavy armor (of which the helmet for convenience was hung round his neck) he carried provisions for two or three weeks, a vessel for cooking his grain when ground into meal, and some of the implements used in throwing up entrenchments—such as stakes, saws, spades, hatchets, and baskets. This pack he would carry upon one of the stakes over his left shoulder, the left arm bearing the shield and the right grasping his javelin. The weight of the pack would be as much as 45



† Other names given to these guards by Caesar are *excubitores* (night guards), and *custodiae*, or *custodes* (watchmen).

pounds. Hence the soldier in this heavy marching order is called *impeditus*, when freed from his pack and in light marching order, *expeditus*.

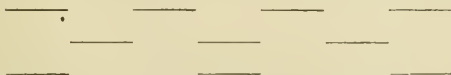
The standards of the army included (1) the eagle (*aquila*), one to each legion, borne by the standard bearer of the legion (*aquilifer*) who was under the immediate command of the first centurion of the legion; (2) the standard or ensign (*signum*), of which each *manipulus* had one, borne by a *signifer*, of different devices, to enable the soldier to distinguish his own place; and (3) the banner (*vexillum*), a square piece of colored cloth attached by a crosspiece to a pole, and serving as the standard for the cavalry and perhaps also



for the auxiliaries, being also used for detachments of legionary soldiers sent out for special duties. A red *vexillum* was displayed from the general's quarters as a signal for battle. For this same purpose, as well as for other signals, a straight trumpet (*tuba*) was also used.

(f) **The Army on the March and in Action.** The army on the march (*agmen*) advanced in a single column, with the baggage of each legion immediately behind it. When near the enemy, the baggage of all the legions was thrown together along with the packs of the soldiers, who thus marched in fighting order. The vanguard is called *primum agmen*, the rear *novissimum agmen*.

When drawn up in line of battle (*acies*), each legion was generally arranged in three lines (*triplex acies*), four cohorts (the pick of the legion) in the first line, and three in each of the others. These were stationed something like the following order, so that the second line could come into action without



interfering with the first. The men stood 10 deep in the

cohort. Occasionally other arrangements are mentioned—the single line, the double line (*acies duplex*) the wedge-shaped (*cuneus*), and the square (*orbis*).

The right wing is called *dextrum cornu*, the left *sinistrum cornu*, the centre *media acies*. The cavalry and light-armed troops were stationed generally on the wings.

The place for drawing up the line of battle was by preference sloping ground, that the soldiers might have the advantage in making the charge and might throw their weapons down, not up.

In attacking a town three methods were employed. If weakly fortified, it might be taken by a sudden rush, the trench being filled up, the gates broken in, the walls undermined or torn down, and scaling ladders (*scalae*) brought up to the walls. At other times it was completely surrounded and the garrison starved out. The third method is the regular siege, carried on by means of certain siege works and engines (the artillery of the Romans). Of these siege works the chief one is the mound (*agger*), raised near the town and gradually growing higher and nearer the wall until it was on a level with it. The side remote from the town formed an inclined slope up which towers (*turres*) could be rolled, from the shelter of which missiles were hurled at the defenders until men working beneath could undermine or batter down the walls, or others could place bridges from the mound to the wall and rush across.

To protect those who were building the mound or battering down the wall various devices were used—the screen (*pluteus*), the shed or mantlet (*testudo* § lit. tortoise shell, *vinea* lit. vine-arbor.)

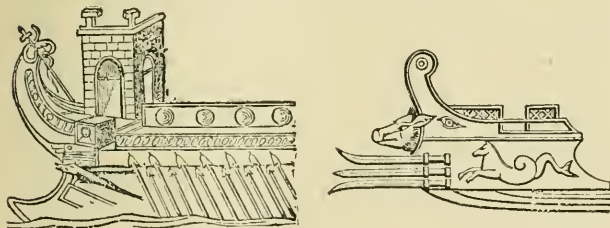
The battering ram (*aries*) was a huge beam tipped with iron, suspended from above, and set in motion from behind by pulling

§ The term *testudo* was also used to describe a peculiar shelter formed by a body of soldiers holding their shields over their heads, thus forming a continuous cover, sloping towards the rear, so as to shed all missiles hurled down at the soldiers beneath.

it back, and then letting it swing forward with all the impetus it could be given.

Engines (*tormenta*) for hurling huge stones or darts were also employed.

(g) **Roman Vessels.** Those used in war were of two kinds, the ship of war or galley (*navis longa*) and the transport (*navis oneraria*). The former were long and narrow, rigged with sails, but at the same time equipped with rowers. A special feature was the beak (*rostrum*), a sharp projection at the bow covered with metal for running down an enemy's ship. We also read of towers being built on the decks from which missiles could be hurled on the enemy.



VI.—CAESAR'S EXPEDITIONS TO BRITAIN.

The *Bellum Britannicum* or War with Britain is not a separate work of Caesar's, but a portion of the fourth and fifth books of his history of the war with Gaul, a fuller account of which will be found in the earlier part of the Introduction.

At the time of these expeditions Caesar was one of the leading men in Rome, but had not yet reached that preeminence or shown those wonderful powers that have made him remembered as one of the greatest men that ever lived. And Rome herself, though the greatest nation in the world at that time, had not yet reached the height of her power or the limits of her dominion. The Roman power had grown

so that it was no longer confined to the city itself with a small surrounding territory, as had been the case 300 years before, nor even to the peninsula of Italy, as 200 years before, but now almost encircled the Mediterranean. A few countries such as Egypt were nominally independent allies, but really in a state of dependence.

But in some regions, as in Gaul (the modern France), only the districts near the Mediterranean owed any allegiance whatever to Rome, and it was one of the greatest achievements of Caesar to conquer the whole of Gaul and make the English Channel and the Rhine the boundaries of the empire. How important and complete this conquest was may be seen from two facts: first, that although Italy had been seriously threatened a half century before by barbarian invaders coming through Gaul from the north of Europe, more than three centuries elapsed before the danger of such incursions visited Italy again; and secondly, that the Roman language and civilization became so firmly implanted in Gaul that, in spite of all the changes wrought in nearly two thousand years, the language of that country (the French) is but a modified Latin, and its laws and institutions show everywhere the influence of Rome.

Caesar was appointed governor of Gaul in 59 B. C. and in the following spring he raised an army of six legions and began to make war on the various tribes which inhabited Gaul. Sometimes he had a good excuse for attacking a tribe, sometimes not, but he was always successful, for the Gauls were not wise enough to combine against him, and Caesar, though he had had little previous experience of war, showed that he was as able a general as he was a shrewd politician.

In three years Caesar had made himself, nominally at least, master of all Gaul, although it took several more years of hard fighting to complete his conquest and crush the insurrections that from time to time broke out and, in 52 B. C. particularly, threatened for a time to undo all his work. In

the spring of 55 B. C., the fourth year of the war, the Gauls invited certain of the German tribes to cross the Rhine and help them, and it was not until late in the summer that Caesar drove them across the Rhine, and himself entering Germany, overawed the tribes and prevented further trouble from that quarter.

Britain also had given aid to the Gauls, and in the few weeks remaining of the summer he made a reconnoitring expedition to the island. He did not venture inland, and returned in a few weeks, but "he had learned where and how to land, and had noted the British method of fighting; above all he had accustomed his men to the sight of the sea and of the painted barbarians." In spite of growing disaffection in Gaul Caesar was not satisfied with this expedition, and in the next summer (54 B. C.) set sail for Britain with a much larger force, as if for a serious invasion. But though he subdued all the southeastern districts, the Britons fought obstinately, and he had to withdraw at the end of the summer without being able to make any permanent impression upon this distant country, which was not again visited by a Roman army for nearly a century (in 43 A.D.) As Froude says: "Thus ended the expedition into Britain. It had been undertaken rather for effect than for material advantage; and everything which had been aimed at had been gained. The Gauls looked no more across the Channel for support of insurrections; the Romans talked with admiration for a century of the far land to which Caesar had borne the eagles; and no exploit gave him more fame with his contemporaries. Nor was it without use to have solved a geographical problem and to have discovered with certainty what the country was, the white cliffs of which were visible from the shores which were now Roman territory."

CAESAR'S BELLUM BRITANNICUM.

(Reprinted from De Bello Gallico, Books IV. and V.)

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUARTUS.

20. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his¹ locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat et, si tempus anni ad bellum² gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus, cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter³ mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique⁴ mercatoribus neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incoherent, neque quem usum

belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

1 **21.** Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret,
idoneum esse arbitratus C. Volusenum cum navi longa
2 praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad
3 se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in
Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britan-
4 niam trajectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus
et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat
5 classem jubet convenire. Interim consilio ejus cognito et
per mercatores perlato ad Britannos a compluribus insulae
civitatis ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides
6 dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus
auditis liberaliter pollicitus hortatusque, ut in ea sententia
permanerent, eos domum remittit et cum iis una Commium,
7 quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat,
cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat et quem sibi
fidelem esse arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in his regionibus
8 magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit,
adeat civitates horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem
9 sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus
perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari
potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non
auderet, quinto die ad Cacsarem revertitur quaeque ibi
perspexisset renuntiat.

1 **22.** Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa
moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati vene-
runt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent,
quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti
bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperas-

set, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis² opportune accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque has tantularum rerum occupationes Britanniae anteponendas judicabat, magnum iis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis³ contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori legatis praefectisque distribuit. Huc⁴ accedebant decem et octo onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum venire possent: has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titurio Sabino et L. Aurunculeio⁵ Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis⁶ esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

23. His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navigan-¹ dum tempestatem tertia fere vigilia solvit equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi iussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset adminis-² tratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat³ natura, atque ita montibus anguste mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad⁴ egrediendum nequaquam idoneum locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris expectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convo-⁵ catis et quae ex Voluseno cognovisset, et quae fieri vellet,

ostendit monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis
6 administrarentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum dato signo et sublatis ancoris circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

1 24. At barbari consilio Romanorum cognito praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti nostros navibus
2 egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant, militibus autem ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi onere armorum oppressis simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum
3 hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi aut ex arido aut paulum in aquam progressi omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis audacter tela conjicerent et equos insuefactos incita-
4 rent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque hujus omnino generis pugnae imperiti non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consuerant, utebantur.

1 25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatio et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac submov-
2 eri jussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo
3 pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis

aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret: 'Desilite,' inquit, 'milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero.' Hoc cum voce magna dixisset, se ex navi projecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus appropinquant.

26. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magnopere perturbabantur; hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumsistebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

27. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt; obsides daturus quaeque imperasset facturos polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemisum.

3 Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo
Caesaris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in
4 vincula conjecerant, tum proelio facto remiserunt. In
petenda pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt,
et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur petiverunt.
5 Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis
missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent,
6 ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum
illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquiore
locis arcessitam paucis diebus sese daturus dixerunt.
7 Interea suos remigrare in agros jusserunt, principesque
undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commen-
dare coeperunt.

1 28. His rebus pace confirmata post diem quartum,
quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves decem et octo, de
quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant,
2 ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent
Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta
tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere
posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur,
aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis
3 occasum, magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur; quae
tamen ancoris jactis cum fluctibus complerentur, neces-
sario adversa nocte in altum profectae continentem
petierunt.

1 29. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies
maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit,
2 nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas
naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat
quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat, et oner-
arias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas

afflictabat neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis 3 reliquae cum essent funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et 4 omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui 1 post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se collocti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intelligerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum 2 factu esse duxerunt rebellione facta frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod his superatis aut reditu interclusis uenimen postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus conjuratione facta paulatim ex castris 3 discedere et suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

31. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, 1 tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et 2 frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat et quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur et quae ad eas res erant usui ex continenti comportari iubebat. Itaque, cum 3 summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

CHAP. 9.

Leaving a strong guard with the ships, Caesar advances into the interior and drives the enemy from one of their strongholds.

1. *castris*,—trans. dat. by 'for.' *ubi...cognovit*,—freely 'and learning.' *quo in loco*,—trans. by one word. *con-sedissent*,—RC.99.d. HF.176.2. *relictis*,—trans. by principal verb. App.5.a.iii. *qui...essent*,—'to protect the ships'; lit.? For the dat. see RC.82.c. HF.134.1. For the subj. see RC.99.a.i. HF.181.1. *de tertia vigilia*,—'early in the third watch,' i.e. soon after midnight; *de* seems to imply that a part of the watch has passed.

eo minus,—'the less'; see on *eo magis*, c.1. § 2. *navibus*, trans. dat. by 'for.' (RC.82.b.) *molli*,—'easy'; some think this means 'shingly.' others 'gently rising.' *relinquebat*,—trans. the tense accurately. *praesidio navibusque*,—for dat. see RC.82.b. *praefecit*,—connected by *et* with *contendit*, not (as part of his ground of confidence) with *relinquebat*; trans. as if it were a new sentence, omitting *et*.

3. *equitatu*,—trans. by 'with.' (RC.85.c.i.) *ex loco superiore*,—belongs to the whole clause, and is not to be taken closely with *prohibere* only. The north bank was higher than the south.

4. *egregie*,—with *munitum*. *munitam*,—'fortified.' modifying *locum*. *belli*,—with *causa*. *ut videbantur*,—'as it seemed'; lit.? (RC.II.14.)

6. *ingredi prohibebant*,—see on *egredi prohibebant*. IV. c. 24. § 1. (RC.97.b.ii. HF.216.3.x.i.)

7. *testudine*,—a continuous cover formed by the shields being held above the soldiers' heads so as to overlap, here for the purpose of enabling materials for a mound to be brought up under shelter. *ad*,—'by or close to.' *paucis*,—'but a few.'

8. **eos**,—*i.e.* the soldiers; object of *vetuit*. **fugientes**,—object of *prosequi*; lit. ‘those fleeing’; freely, ‘the fugitives.’ (RC.II.148.*b.*) **longinus**,—as in c.8. § 2. **munitioni**,—trans. by ‘for.’ See Introduction, p.xix.*d.*

CHAP. 10.

As troops are setting out the next day in pursuit, news comes of serious damage caused to the fleet by a storm.

1. **Postridie ejus diei**,—lit. ‘on the morrow of that day’; freely, ‘on the next day.’ (RC.81.*i.*) **in expeditionem**,—‘on (lit. for) an expedition’; strictly, a rapid march of troops in light marching order.

2. **His progressis**,—trans. by ‘when,’ replacing *cum* of the next clause by ‘and.’ **aliquantum itineris**,—RC.81.*b.i.* HF.69.10. **extremi**,—‘(only) the last,’ *i.e.* of the troops sent out, not of the enemy. **qui nuntiarent**,—App.29.*b.*Cf. on *qui doceant*, c.1. § 7.

coorta,—trans. as in App.5.*a.iii.* **neque...neque**,—‘not...and not,’ lit.? **subsisterent, possent**,—RC.99.*g.i.* HF.198.2. **vim**,—for the declension see RC.9. HF.45.

3. **eo concursu**,—lit. ‘that collision,’ *eo* referring to what is implied in *quod neque...possent*; freely, ‘the collision that resulted.’

CHAP. 11.

Caesar returns to the coast, and after making necessary arrangements to repair the losses, once more sets out against the enemy, whose increased forces are now under the command of Cassivellaunus.

1. **itinere desistere**,—‘to give up the march or pursuit,’ not implying that they were to return to the camp. (RC.85.*h.* HF.158.2.)

2. **eadem quae**,—‘the same state of affairs as’; lit.? **coram**,—freely, ‘with his own eyes.’ **sic**,—‘such or of such

hiemi navigationem subjiendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eosdem quos reliqui portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

37. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere jusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnauerunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armis terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

38. Caesar postero die T. Labienum legatum cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo superiore anno perfugio fuerant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labieni pervenerunt. At Q. Titurius et L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis ex literis Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

C. JULII CÆSARIS
COMMENTARII
DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUINTUS.

1. L. DOMITIO, Ap. Claudio consulibus discedens ab
hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consue-
rat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefererat, uti quam
plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas veteresque
reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demon-
strat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo
facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consue-
vimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commuta-
tiones aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat,
ad onera ac multitudinem jumentorum transportandam
paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus.
Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas
multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, 4
ex Hispania apportari jubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae 5
citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a
Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari
audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperato
certumque in locum convenire jubet. Qua re nuntiata 7
Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum

rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere. Percepta oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci jubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituent.

1 2. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summa omnium rerum inopia circiter sescentas ejus generis, cujus supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invenit instructas neque multum
3 abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus atque iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam trajetum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum triginta a continenti; huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum
4 reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis quatuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Treverorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

1 3. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut
2 supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque
3 adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos

confirmavit quaeque in Treveris gererentur ostendit. At 4
Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui
per aetatem in armis esse non poterant. in silvam Arduen-
nam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines
Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet,
bellum parare instituit, sed posteaquam nonnulli principes 5
ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et
adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt
et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam
civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus
desereretur, [Indutiomarus] legatos ad Caesarem mittit :
Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, 6
quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis
nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur :
itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seseque, si Caesar 7
permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque
fortunas ejus fidei permissurum.

4. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur, 1
quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne
aetatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur omnibus ad
Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad
se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. His adductis, in 2
iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim
evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti
in officio maneret; nihilo tamen secius principibus 3
Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi
conciliavit, quod cum merito ejus a se fieri intellegebat,
tum magni interesse arbitrabatur ejus auctoritatem inter
suos quam plurimum valere, cujus tam egregiam in se
voluntatem perspexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indu- 4
tiomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui, et qui jam ante

inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

1 5. His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum
2 legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit sexaginta naves, quae
in Meldis factae erant, tempestate rejectas cursum tenere
non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse;
reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus
3 instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae con-
venit numero millium quattuor principesque ex omnibus
4 civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem
perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco
secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum
Galliae verebatur.

1 6. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante
ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis
constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum
imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis
2 cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduorum
Dumnorix dixerat sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri;
quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut
deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant.
3 Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille
omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia
relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare
timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret.
4 Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe
impetrandi adempta principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare
singulos hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent:
5 metu territare: non sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni
nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos
in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in

Britanniam traductos necaret ; fidem reliquis interponere, 6
jusjurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intel-
lexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a
compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

7. Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae 1
dignitatis tribuebat, coërcendum atque deterrendum,
quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat ; quod 2
longius ejus amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum,
ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies 3
circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus
ventus navigationem impediēbat, qui magnam partem omnis
temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in
officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia
ejus consilia cognosceret : tandem idoneam nactus tem- 4
pestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves jubet.
At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus 5
Aeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere
coepit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar intermissa profectione 6
atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem equitatus
ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat ; si vim 7
faciat neque pareat, interfici jubet, nihil hunc se absente
pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium
neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manus
defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit saepe clamitans
liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum 9
circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt : at equites
Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

8. His rebus gestis Labieno in continente cum tribus 1
legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus
tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia
gererentur cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re

2 caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero
equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum
naves solvit et leni Africo proventus media circiter nocte
vento intermisso cursum non tenuit et longius delatus
aestu orta luce sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit.
3 Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contē-
dit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse
4 egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admo-
dum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravi-
busque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum
5 navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britan-
niam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in
6 eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis
cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine
navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas
sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno
erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora
loca abdiderant.

1 9. Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto.
ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae
consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus
trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad
hostes contendit eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore
molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et prae-
2 sidio navibusque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu
progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim hostium
3 copias conspicatus est. Illi, equitatu atque essedis ad
flumen progressi, ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et
4 proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in
silvas abdiderunt locum nacti egregie et natura et opere
munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur, causa jam

ante praeparaverant ; nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes 5 introitus erant praecclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant 6 nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites 7 legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adjecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar 8 prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod magna parte diei consumpta munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

10. Postridie ejus diei mane tripertito milites equitesque 1 in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum jam extremi 2 essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore ejectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernatoresque vim tempestatis pati possent : itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incom- 3 modum acceptum.

11. His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque 1 revocari atque itinere desistere jubet, ipse ad naves revertitur ; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognov- 2 erat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter quadraginta navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios 3 arcessi jubet ; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, 4 iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, 5 etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem 6 consumit ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem

7 militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie
 munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus
 8 reliquit; ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum
 venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copiae
 Britannorum convenerant summa imperii bellique admini-
 strandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; ejus
 fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appel-
 latur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta.
 9 Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia
 bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni
 hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

1 12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos
 2 in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab
 iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgio trans-
 ierunt (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appel-
 lantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt) et bello
 illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt.
 3 Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaeque aedificia
 fere Gallicis consimilia. pecorum magnus numerus.
 4 Utuntur [aut aere] aut nummo aureo aut taleis ferreis ad
 5 certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi
 plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis
 ferrum, sed ejus exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato.
 Materia ejusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum
 6 atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare
 fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque
 causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia remissiori-
 bus frigoribus.

1 13. Insula natura triquetra, ejus unum latus est contra
 Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium,
 quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appellantur, ad orientem

solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona: complures praeterea minores subjectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum millium. Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est objecta terra, sed ejus angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc millia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies septem centum millium passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso, atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

15. Equites hostium essedarii que acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri

omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas
2 collesque compulerint ; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius
3 insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi intermisso
spatio imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione
castrorum subito se ex silvis ejecerunt impetuque in eos
facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter
4 pugnauerunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a
Caesare atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae
perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent,
novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacis-
5 sime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo
die Q. Laberius Durus, tribunus militum, interficitur.
Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

1 16. Toto hoc in genere pugnae cum sub oculis omnium
ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est nostros propter
gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent
neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad
2 huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo
proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto
plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros
removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio
3 contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus
et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat.
4 Accedebat huc, ut numquam conferti, sed rari magnisque
intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent.
atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes
defatigatis succederent.

1 17. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus
constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie
2 nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie
cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem

equitatum cum Gaio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia disceserunt, neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

18. Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animum advertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, ejusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis per fugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis dimissis amplioribus copiis millibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros

ejecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat.
3 Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

1 20. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adolescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cujus pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque
2 erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque
3 imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui
4 praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

1 21. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuria prohibitis Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt.
2 Ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis
3 magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae
4 causa convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum: tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit.
5 Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non

tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus⁶ ibi numerus pecoris repertus multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad¹ Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taxinagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra^a navalia de improvviso adorian^{tur} atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, 2 nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassi-³ vellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditioⁿe ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum constituisset hiemare in⁴ continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellexeret, obsides imperat et quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit⁵ atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves¹ invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum mag-² num numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot naviga-³ tionibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur; at ex iis,⁴ quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur et prioris commeatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta perpaucae locum

5caperent, reliquæ fere omnes rejicerentur. Quas cum
aliquamdiu Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a
navigatione excluderetur. quod æquinoctium suberat,
necessario angustius milites collocavit ac summa tranquil-
6litate consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima
luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.



NOTES

ON

CAESAR'S BELLUM BRITANNICUM.

IN THE NOTES THE FOLLOWING ABBREVIATIONS
ARE USED :

App.—The sections of Appendix I. following the Vocabulary, on page 71.

RC.—The sections of Part III. (unless otherwise stated) of Robertson and Carruthers' Primary Latin Book.

HF.—The pages and sections of Henderson and Fletcher's First Latin Book.

c.—chapter (of the same book unless otherwise stated).

trans.—translate or translation.

lit.—literally; lit.? is used where a free rendering has been given, to call attention to the literal translation.

fn.—footnote.

p.—page.

cf.—compare.

NOTES ON BOOK IV.—CHAP. 20-38.

Caesar's first expedition to Britain.

CHAP. 20.*

Having decided on the expedition, Caesar tries in vain to get information about the island from Gallic traders.

1. **exigua**,—not 'a small,' but 'only a small'; emphatic from position. **parte....reliqua**,—abl. absolute (RC.85.o.; and II.59. HF.102.3.N.); for a literal translation supply 'being' (App.5.a.N.); for a neater rendering, trans. by clause beginning with 'although' (App.5.a.ii.), and supply 'and' as a connective before *etsi*, etc. **Caesar**,—subject of *contendit*, should come in English near its verb. **locis**,—do not trans. the plural of *locus* by 'places'; for better equivalents see the Vocabulary. **maturae...hiemes**,—goes closely with *etsi in his locis*, and in English would come next to it. **quod**,—a conjunction.

ad septentriones vergit,—'lies toward the north.' **contendit**,—'made an effort.' **bellis**,—App.5.c. (RC.85.b. HF. 82.1.) **hostibus**,—the Gauls, of course. **inde**,—i.e. from Britain. **subministrata**,—for *subministrata esse*; with *auxilia* in the accus. and inf. construction, App. 34. (RC. 101.b. HF.109.1.) **intellegebat**,—'he knew (was aware).' For the tense see App.26.a.i.

2. **si**,—'even if.' **ad....gerendum**,—the gerundive con-

*The first three chapters are given in a simplified form in Appendix III., page 91, with notes of a more elementary character than those given above.

struction, App.40. (RC.104.b. HF.170.3.) **defleceret**,—trans. subj. as in App.32.; ‘were unsuitable for or did not enable him to.’ See note on *adisset* below. **usui**,—App.3.c.; *usui esse*=‘to be an advantage, to be of service.’ (RC.82.c. HF.134.1.) **fore**,—App.31. ‘it would be.’ The subject is really contained in the clause *si modo...cognovisset*.

adisset,—from *adeo*, for *adiisset*; ‘approached,’ lit. ‘should have approached.’ For the form see RC.66. (second paragraph). For the reason for the subj. mood see RC.99.h.iii. HF.206.4. The tense is due to the fact that the principal verb, *arbitrabatur*, is a secondary (or past) tense (RC.107.fn. HF.178.1.), and just as English in such a case changes *is* to *was*, *shall* to *should*, *shall have* to *should have*, so Latin changes *deficeret* and *adiero* to *adiisset*. So *perspexisset* and *cognovisset*. Perfect tenses are used because the advantage would appear only *after* he had gained the information.

genus hominum,—‘the character of the inhabitants. **quae omnia...erant**,—lit. ‘all which things were’; freely, ‘all of which was.’ **fere**,—goes, as usual, with the word preceding it, *omnia*, not with *incognita*.

3. **neque...quisquam**,—‘no one’; lit.? **illo**,—adverb. **adit**,—from *adeo*. **neque...quicquam**,—‘and nothing.’ subject of *notum est*. **ipsis**,—App.17.b.: *his ipsis* are the *mercatores*. **Gallias**,—‘Gaul.’ The plural is used with reference to the division of Gaul into the three countries of the Belgae, Galli, and Aquitani. Elsewhere, as in § 1, the sing. is used. **notum**,—from *nosco*.

4. **Itaque**,—because of the ignorance of the Gauls; it goes with *reperire poterant*, not with *vocatis*. **vocatis**,—trans. by clause in active voice with ‘although.’ App.5.a.ii. **se**,—trans. as in App.14.b. **neque...neque**,—‘not...or.’ Translate *neque quanta...portus* after *reperire poterat*, on which they depend. **esset**,—‘was’; App.31. For the reason for the subj. mood see RC.99.d. HF.176.2. So the remaining subjunctives of the clause.

quae aut quantae,—the latter referring to their size, the former rather to their names. **belli**,—*trans. gen. by 'in.'* App.2.c. **uterentur**,—freely 'possessed, had.' For the abl. with *utor* see RC.II.65. HF.116.

qui essent...idonei portus,—'what suitable harbors existed or there were.' **ad**,—'for.' **majorum**,—App.10; 'larger than usual'; the war galleys and transports were larger than the small coasting vessels of the Gauls.

CHAP. 21.

Caesar sends Volusenus to reconnoitre. Meanwhile he receives offers of submission from several states of Britain. Volusenus returns with but little information.

1. **ad haec cognoscenda**,—the gerundive construction; App.40; RC.104.b. HF.170.3.); with *praemittit*, not with *idoneum*. **priusquam faceret**,—lit. 'before he should make'; freely, 'before making.' For the subj. mood see RC.99.f.iv. HF.201.5. **idoneum**,—'a suitable person.' **arbitratus**,—'thinking'; App.37.a. **navi longa**,—see Introduction, p. xxiii. For the form of the abl. see RC.49.c. HF.40.

2. **Huic**,—'him.' For the translation of the dat. case see App.3.b. **ut exploratis...revertatur**,—'after finding out ...to return' or 'to find out...and return,' lit.? App.5.a.i. and iii. For the subj. mood see RC.99.a.2. HF.181.3.

3. **Ipse**,—App.17.a. **in**,—App.6. **trajectus**,—*i.e.* at the States of Dover. For all geographical references consult the map on page xi. of Introduction.

4. **naves**,—*accus.* with *jubet convenire*. **quam...classem**,—*trans.* as if it were *classem quam*. For the explanation see App.11.d.iv. **ad**,—'for.' **Venetieum bellum**,—Caesar spent most of the summer of B.C. 56 in subduing the Veneti, a tribe on the northwest coast (see map). As it was impossible to effect anything from the land-side, Caesar built a fleet and overcame them in a great sea-fight.

5. *ejus*,—App.12.*b.* *perlato*,—with *consilio*, from *perfero*. *qui polliceantur*,—trans. as in App.11.*c.* For the subj. mood see RC.II.25. HF.181.1. *dare*,—this, and a passage in Bk.VI.9.7., are the only places where Caesar has the pres. inf. after *polliceor*. The regular construction will come in the next chap. § 1. *imperio*,—for the translation of the dat. see App.3.*b.* (RC.82.*e.i.* HF.105.9.)

6. *Quibus*,—i.e. the *legati*. Translate ‘these’; App.11.*b.* *liberaliter pollicitus*,—‘(and) having made liberal promises,’ lit.? *ut...permanerent*,—App.29.*b.* For the subj. mood cf. on *revertatur*, § 2. *domum*,—‘home’; for acc. see RC. II.93.*a.* HF.85.1. *una*,—adverb. *Commium*,—with *mittit*, end of § 7.

7. *Atrebatibus*,—They dwelt near the Nervii and with them had been conquered by Caesar two years before. (Intro.d.p.xii.) *constituerat*,—‘had made,’ lit. ‘had established.’ *ibi*,—i.e. among the Atrebatas. *cujus*,—‘whose.’ *et...et*,—‘both...and,’ joining *virtutem* and *consilium*; but in this case ‘both’ must be omitted in English. *quem*, etc.,—‘whom he thought to be’ or, more freely, ‘who, he thought, was,’ etc. *his*,—Gaul, not Britain. *magni habebatur*,—lit. ‘estimated at a great price’; freely, ‘was valued highly.’ For the neuter genitive see RC.81.*g.i.* HF.150.2.

8. *Huic*,—as in § 2. *quas possit civitates*,—‘all the states he can,’ lit. ‘the states which he can.’ For the mood of *possit* see RC.99.*e.* HF.206.4. *adeat*,—depending on *imperat*; trans. by infin. and ‘to’; so *hortetur* and *nuntiet* which are connected with *adeat* by *-que*. For the subj. mood (which generally has *ut* prefixed) see RC.99.*a.2.i.* *ut...fidem sequantur*,—‘to embrace the alliance’: depending on *hortetur*; cf. on *permanerent*, § 6. *se*,—App.14.*c.* *venturum*,—for *venturum esse*; App.34.*c.*

9. *regionibus*,—‘country.’ *quantum*, etc.,—lit. ‘according to whatsoever (of) opportunity could be given to one who,’ etc.; *quantum facultatis* (App.2.*d.*) being equivalent to

tantum facultatis quantum. Freely 'so far as one could, who,' etc. **ei qui...auderet**,—'to one who did not venture.' The phrase thus means, not Volusenus, but 'a man like Volusenus'; for the subj. mood see RC.99.c. HF.188.4. It might also be explained as meaning 'to him (*i.e.* Volusenus), seeing that he did not venture'; in which case trans. 'so far as he could, seeing that,' etc.; and for the subj. mood see RC.99.g.iii. HF.198.4. **navi**,—Caesar has both *navi egredi* and *e navi egredi*. **quaeque**,—two words, not from *quisque*, 'each.' **quae...perspexisset**,—App.31. For the subj. mood see RC.99.d. HF.176.2.

CHAP. 22.

After receiving the submission of certain of the Morini, Caesar collects his fleet and makes final arrangements for his departure.

1. **locis**,—cf. note on c. 20. § 1. **parandarum**,—the gerundive construction, App.40. (RC.104.b. HF.170.3.) **moratur**,—For the tense, see RC.II.173. HF.201.3.N.; trans. 'was waiting.'

qui...excusarent,—trans. as in App.29.b. For the subj. mood see RC.II.25. HF.181.1. and compare *qui polliceantur*, c. 21. § 5. **de...consilio**,—lit. 'with regard to the policy of previous (*or* former) time'; freely, 'for their previous policy.' For the genitive see RC.81.e. HF.130.7. The Morini had joined the Belgian confederacy against Caesar two years before, and the next year had been in alliance with the Veneti; Caesar had made an unsuccessful attempt to reduce them at the end of the previous summer.

quod,—'in that'; lit. 'because.' **homines...imperiti**,—these words do not form the subject of *ferissent*, but are descriptive of the subject, and give a reason for their action. Trans. therefore, 'they, being uncivilized.' **consuetudinis**,

—trans. genitive as in App. 2. c. (RC. 81. *d. f. i.*) The ‘custom’ was, as Virgil, a Roman poet, expresses it, “to lay down the law of peace, to be merciful to the conquered, and beat the haughty down.”

populo,—trans. by ‘on.’ For the dative case see RC. 82. *b.* HF. 5. 1. **fecissent**,—trans. by English past-perfect with ‘had,’ App. 31. For the subj. mood see RC. 99. *g. i.* HF. 198. 2. **que**,—connects *excusarent* and *pollicerentur*, which are translated similarly. For the difference in tense from *pollicantur*, c. 21. § 5, see RC. 107. *a.* HF. 183. 3., and notice the difference in the principal verbs. **se....facturos**,—accus. and infin. depending on *pollicerentur*. Trans. by Eng. infin. w. ‘to’ rather than by a clause w. ‘that.’ **ea quae**,—best rendered by one word; App. 12. *b. x. b.* **imperasset**,—for *imperavisset* (RC. 66). Trans. by Eng. past tense; lit. ‘should have ordered.’ For the subj. mood see RC. 99. *e.* HF. 206. 4. For the tense, see on *adisset*, c. 20. § 2.

2. **Hoc**,—subject of *accidisse*. **satis**,—‘quite,’ w. *opportune*. **arbitratus**,—trans. by Eng. pres. participle; App. 37. *a*; lit.? **neque volebat**,—‘did not wish’; so with the other *neque*’s following; lit.? **post tergum**,—freely ‘behind him.’ **gerendi**,—the gerundive construction, App. 40. For the trans. of the gen. case w. *facultatem* see App. 2. *c.*

has tantularum, etc.,—‘attention to such trifling matters.’ For the genitive see App. 2. *c.* and RC. 81. *d.* **anteponendas**,—supply *esse*; App. 34. *c.* Trans. as in App. 41. (RC. 104. *a.* HF. 173. 5.) **iis imperat**,—‘requires (or demands) of them’; with dat. of person of whom the demand is made (*i. e.* to whom the order is given), acc. of that which is demanded. **Quibus**,—the hostages; trans. as in c. 21. § 6. **eos**,—the Morini. **in fidem**,—‘into alliance’ or ‘under his protection.’

3. **onerariis**,—see Introduction, p. xxiii. **coactis contractisque**,—the former of levying, pressing into service, the latter of gathering to one place. **quot**,—lit. ‘as many as’; freely ‘the number which’: *quot* is subject of *esse*. **satis**

esse,—in English ‘to be’ may here be omitted. **quod**.... **habebat**,—lit. ‘whatever (amount) of ships of war he had besides’; freely, ‘all the ships,’ etc. This whole clause forms the object of *distribuit*. For the genitive *navium* see App.2.d and RC.81.b.i. HF.69.10. **quaestori**, etc. For these officers see Introduction, p. xviii. Notice that *legatus* has two meanings in Latin (*e.g.* here and in § 1), to be decided only by the context.

4. **Huc accedebant**,—lit. ‘to this came, *i.e.* were added’; freely, ‘besides these there were.’ **ab**,—‘at a distance of.’ **millibus passuum**,—freely ‘miles’; lit.? For the gen. case see App.2.d and RC.81.b.ii. HF.69.10. **tenebantur quo minus**....**possent**,—‘were prevented (*or* kept) from being able,’ lit. ‘so that they might the less be able.’ *Quo minus* is also often written as one word. For the subj. see RC.99.a.1.i. HF.185.2.

5. **Q**.—In translation the full form should be given for such abbreviations in proper names. In Latin a letter so used stands always for the same name. **ducendum dedit**,—‘he gave....to be led (*or* to lead)’; *ducendum* is the gerundive in agreement with *exercitum*. (RC.104.c. HF.173.7.)

6. **satis esse**,—see the note in § 3 above. **arbitrabatur**,—the subject is Caesar, not Rufus.

CHAP. 23.

Setting sail about midnight, he reaches Britain in the morning, but does not come to a suitable landing place until the afternoon.

1. **Constitutis, nactus**,—trans. both by ‘having,’ etc., supplying the connective ‘and.’ App.5.a.iii. **navigandum**,—the gerund; trans. as in App.39.a. (RC.103.c. HF.170.2. **vigilia**,—The time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal periods called *vigiliae* or watches, and the time from sunrise to sunset into twelve equal periods called *horae*

or hours. These periods would thus vary with the season; at the time referred to (late in the summer), the sun rose about 5 a.m. and set about 7 p.m.

solvit,—the full expression is found in c. 36. § 3. **ulteriorem**,—‘farther.’ *i.e.* lying up the coast (to the north-east). The exact localities are unknown. **se**,—App.11.*b*.

2. **quibus**,—trans. as in c. 21. § 6. **cum**,—‘as.’ **tardius**,—‘too slowly’; lit. ‘more slowly (than they should).’ App.10. (RC.88.*b*.) **esset administratum**,—see App.24 for the impersonal passive. Trans. freely by the active, ‘these set about their work’; more lit. ‘the matter was attended to by these.’ For the subj. see RC.99.*g*.ii. HF.203.1. **ipse**,—trans. here ‘by himself,’ after the verb; lit. ‘he himself.’ opposed to *quibus*. **hora**,—the abl. case has nothing to do with *circiter*, which modifies *quarta*. (RC.85.*b*. HF.82.1.) For the meaning see on *vigilia* § 1. **expositas . . . copias armatas**,—‘the armed forces . . . displayed.’ The word *expositas* is chosen to suggest that their mere appearance was expected to overawe the invaders.

3. **Cujus**,—‘this’; lit.? App.11.*b*. **haec**,—freely ‘as follows’ or ‘such’; it is more fully explained by *atque . . . continebatur*. **ita anguste**, etc.,—‘so closely bordered.’ [Many editions read *angustis* (with *montibus*), in which case the meaning ‘steep’ must be given, though difficult to account for.] **uti**,—another form for *ut*. **posset**,—for the subj. mood see RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.

4. **Hunc . . . arbitratus**,—understand *esse*, App.34. **egrediendum**,—the gerund of a deponent verb; cf. on *navigandum*. § 1. **dum . . . convenirent**,—trans. after *ad . . . expectavit*. For the subj. mood (to be rendered here by ‘should’), see RC.99.*f*.iii. HF.201.4. **ad**,—‘until.’

5. **tribunis militum**,—For these officers see Introduction. p. xviii. **cognovisset, vellet**,—trans. as in App.31. For the subj. mood see RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2. **quae fieri vellet**,—‘what he wished done,’ lit. ‘to be done.’

monuit . . . administrarentur,—‘instructed them to do everything, (lit. that all things were to be done) at the [slightest] signal (lit. at a nod) and at the [proper] moment, as the science of warfare, and especially naval warfare, required, seeing that this [latter] was subject to rapid and uncertain changes, (lit. had a rapid movement).’

ut . . . postularent,—*ut* means ‘as.’ in which sense it regularly has the indic.; for the subj. see RC.99.e.iii. HF.206.4. **maxime ut**,—this *ut* need not be translated; it is a repetition of the preceding *ut*, to introduce the second subject of *postularent*. **ut quae**,—‘inasmuch as these’; *quae* refers to *maritimae res*; a little more forcible than *quae* alone, which would have had the same meaning with the subj. (RC.99.g. iii. HF.198.4.) The subj. mood is not due to the use of *ut*. **administrarentur**,—depends directly on *monuit*; *ut* might have been used to connect them; cf. *imperat . . . adeat*, c. 21, § 8, and see RC.99.a.2.i. **ad nutum et ad tempus**,—the former referring to *celerem*, the latter to *instabilem motum*.

6. **dimissis, naetus**,—trans. like *constitutis . . . nactus* in § 1. **uno**,—‘one and the same.’ **secundum**,—not the numeral. **dato, sublati**,—trans. as if principal verbs, App.5.a.iii, supplying a connective ‘and’ before the next clause. **aperto . . . litore**,—‘off a . . . shore’; really an abl. absol., App.5.a.N.

CHAP. 24.

The Britons, following along the shore, vigorously oppose the landing.

1. **praemisso**,—trans. by principal clause, supplying a connective ‘and’ before the next clause, *reliquis . . . prohibebant*. **quo genere**,—lit. ‘which kind (i.e., of warriors),’ referring to both *equitatu* and *essedariis*; freely ‘the class of warriors that.’ For the abl. depending on *uti* see RC.

II.65. HF.116. **consuerunt**,—for *consueverunt*. (RC.66.) See Vocabulary for free rendering of the perfect tense, (I have become=I am).

copiis,—trans. by 'with'; for the abl. without *cum* see RC.85.e.i. HF.236. note 11. **subsecuti**,—trans. by English pres. participle. **nostros**,—App.16. **navibus**,—see note on *navi*, c. 21. § 9. **egredi prohibebant**,—trans. the infin. by 'from landing.' For the peculiar force of the imperf. tense see App.26.b. (RC.II.199.b. HF.216.3.N.1.)

2. **erat**,—the subject is *difficultas*, but trans. as in App.1. N.B. **has**,—referring to what follows, *quod naves*, etc. **nisi . . . non**,—freely 'only'; lit.?

militibus autem . . . desiliendum . . . erat,—'while the soldiers . . . had to leap down'; similarly *consistendum* and *pugnandum*. For the impersonal passive see App.24. (RC. 104.a.ii. HF.173.6.); for the gerundive, App.41. (RC.104.a. HF.173.5.); for the dative, RC.82.d. HF.173.4. **ignotis locis**,—lit. 'the country being unknown.' abl. absol.; freely, 'unacquainted with the ground' in agreement with 'soldiers.' **impeditis manibus**,—also abl. absol.; trans. by 'with.' **oppressis**,—dat. agreeing with *militibus*.

3. **cum**,—'whereas.' **illi**,—referring to *hostibus*; App. 18.b. **membris**,—cf. on *manibus*, above § 2. **notissimis locis**,—cf. on *ignotis locis*, § 2; freely, 'perfectly familiar with the ground. **conjecerent**,—App.31. (RC.II.169. HF. 203.3.). **insuefactos**,—freely 'who were trained to this.'

4. **Quibus**,—as in c. 21. § 6; App.11.b. **generis pugnae**,—'style (or mode) of fighting.' For the gen. cf. on *consuetudinis*, c. 22. § 1. **non . . . utebantur**,—'did not show (display).' **quo**,—'as,' lit. 'which,' depending on *uti*, which with *consuerant* need not be represented in English. **consuerant**,—for *consueverant*; cf. on § 1.

CHAP. 25.

Caesar tries to dislodge the enemy by hurling missiles from his boats, while a brave standard-bearer gallantly heads a rush towards the shore.

1. **Quod**,—object of *animalvertit*; App.11.b. **naves**,—subject of *removeri*, *incitari* and *constitui*. **quarum**,—‘whose,’ **inusitator**,—‘less familiar,’ *i.e.* than that of the transports. **et motus**,—‘and (whose) movement was quicker (or freer) for service (or handling).’

ad,—‘on.’ **latus apertum**,—‘the exposed flank,’ *i.e.*, the right side, unprotected by shields. **hostes**,—subject of *propelli* and *submoveri*. **quae res**,—freely ‘a manoeuvre which’; lit.? App.11.d.iv. **usui**,—see on c. 20. § 2. (RC.82.c. HF.134.1.)

2. **remorum motu**,—the Britons used only sails with their large vessels. **paulum modo**,—‘but only a little’; trans. after *pedem* (from *pes*) *retulerunt*.

3. **Atque**,—‘moreover.’ **emnetantibus**,—trans. the pres. partic. as in App.5.a.N, using ‘while’ or ‘as.’ **qui**,—‘he who.’ App.11.d.i. **aquilam**,—see Introduction, p. xxi. **ut . . . eveniret**,—trans. as in App.29.a., using ‘might.’ (RC. 99.a.2. HF.181.3.) **ea res**,—freely ‘his act or purpose’; lit.? **legioni**,—trans. dat. by ‘for.’

inquit,—‘cried,’ to be brought in before *desilite*. For the form see RC.72.d. HF.289.2. **desilite**,—an imperative form. **vultis**,—from *volo* (RC.43. HF.147.) **reipublicae**,—from *respublica* (RC.9. HF.64.3.) **praestitero**,—trans. by English simple future (RC.II.205.b.)

4. **cū**,—see footnote to App. 31. **voce**,—for the abl. see RC.85.e. HF.71.3. **dixisset**,—RC.II.169. HF.203.3. So *conspexissent*, § 6. **in**,—‘against.’

5. **cohortati**,—trans. by pres. partic. **inter se**,—‘one another,’ lit.? (RC.60.e.) **ne . . . admitteretur**,—freely, ‘not

to incur'; lit.? (RC.99.a.2. HF.181.3.) *dedecus*,—*i.e.*, as the loss of the eagle. *universi*,—as § 6 shows, he is speaking only of those in the same ship as the standard-bearer.

6. *Hos item*, etc.,—‘when those in the nearest ships saw them, they also followed, and,’ etc. *hos* is object of *conspexissent* and not connected with *ex proximis navibus*. *ex . . . conspexissent*,—lit. ‘they saw from the nearest ships.’ *subsecuti*,—trans. as in App.37.a.X.B. *appropinquarunt*,—for *appropinquaverunt*. (RC.66.)

CHAP. 26.

The Romans, after much fighting, gain the shore and put the Britons to flight.

1. *pugnatum est*,—For the trans. see App.21. (RC.96.b. HF.164.2.) *utrisque*,—from *uterque*. For the declension see RC.26.end. HF.132.2. *nostri*,—subject of *perturbabantur*. In English the verb should appear at the beginning of the sentence.

atque,—freely ‘but.’ *alius alia ex navi*,—freely ‘the men from the different ships’; lit. ‘[one man from one ship and] another from another ship.’ On account of the change of number in the free rendering, trans. *occurrebat* and *se aggregabat* also as though plural. *Alius* is subject of *aggregabat*. *quibuscumque . . . occurrerat*,—‘whatever . . . they fell in with.’ For the dat. see RC.82.e.ii. HF.120.2. For the tense see RC.II.204.a. So *conspexerant*, § 2, and *conspexerat* § 3.

2. *vero*,—express by ‘while’ at the beginning of the clause. *notis*,—cf. on *ignotis*. c. 24. § 2. Trans. freely ‘were familiar with . . . (and),’ App.5.a.iii. *ubi . . . conspexerant*,—‘whenever . . . they saw.’ *singulares*,—lit. ‘one by one’; here probably ‘in small (or scattered) groups’ is meant. *incitatis*,—trans. as in App.5.a. either i. or iii.

adoriebantur,—trans. the imperf. tense by 'would,' as in App.26.c. So *circumsistebant* and *coniciebant*. **plures**,—do not trans. 'more'; see Vocabulary. **universos**,—'the main body'; opposed to *singulares*.

3. **Quod**,—as in c. 25. § 1. **item**,—'(and) also.' **quos.... his**,—lit. 'whomsoever.... to these'; App.11.d.iii.; freely, 'to whomsoever transposing the clauses; or more freely still, 'whenever.... any, to these.' **conspexerat**,—trans. as in § 2. **submittebat**,—trans. by 'would,' App.26.c; and cf. *adoriebantur* § 2.

4. **simul**,—with the force of *simul atque*, see Vocabulary. **suis**,—'their comrades,' App. 15. c. **consecutis**,—freely 'with....following;'; lit.? App.5.a. **neque**,—'but....not.' **longius**,—freely 'any distance.' App.10. (RC.88.b.) **quod equites**, etc.,—the cavalry mentioned in c. 23. § 1. The explanation will be found in c. 28.

Hoc unum,—lit. 'this alone was lacking to C. for (with a view to) his former good fortune'; freely, 'was lacking to complete Caesar's usual good fortune.'

CHAP. 27.

The Britons sue for peace, which Caesar grants after demanding hostages.

1. **simul....miserunt**,—English would reverse the order of these two clauses. **de**,—freely 'to treat for'; lit.? **daturos**,—understand *esse*, and *se* as subject. App.31. Cf. on *facturos*, c. 22. § 1. **quaeque**,—two words; cf. on c.21. § 9. **imperasset**,—cf. on c. 22. § 1.

2. **quem supra**, etc.,—*quem* is subj. of *praemissum (esse)*, App.31.c.; lit. 'whom I had shown to have been sent'; freely 'who, as I stated before, was sent.' **supra**,—in c. 21. § 6.

3. **Hunc**,—‘him,’ object of *comprehenderant*, which in Eng. would appear before *enavi . . . deferret*. **egressum**,—agreeing with *huic*; ‘on his landing’ or ‘when he landed’; lit.? **cum**,—‘although.’ For the subj. see RC.99.i. HF.204.5. **modo**,—‘in the character (or capacity) of,’ or freely, ‘as.’

4. **petenda**,—the gerundive construction; App.40. **rei**,—‘act’; trans. gen.by ‘for,’ App. 2.c. **contulerunt**,—‘laid.’ **imprudentiam**,—that is, their ignorance of the customs observed between nations; cf. c. 22. § 1. **ut ignoscereetur**,—trans. by pass. infin. w. ‘to’; lit. ‘that pardon should be granted’; for the impers. pass. see App.21 and RC.96.b. HF. 161.1.; for the mood see RC.99.a.2. HF.181.3.

5. **questus . . . dixit**,—‘after complaining . . . said’ or ‘complained . . . but said.’ **quod**,—lit. ‘because,’ freely ‘that.’ It goes with *bellum . . . intulissent*, which may in English come before the clause *cum . . . petissent*. **cum**,—‘although’ or ‘while.’ **missis**,—trans. by a clause coordinate with *petissent*, supplying ‘and.’ App.5.a.iii. **petissent**,—for the form see RC.66; for the mood, RC.99.i. HF. 204.5.

ignoscere,—understand *se* as subj. Notice that the pres. tense implies that Caesar said ‘I pardon,’ not ‘I shall pardon,’ and translate accordingly. (RC.106.b. HF.206.3.) **imprudentiae**,—trans. dat. as in App.3.b. (RC.S2.e.i. HF. 105.9.)

6. **quorum**,—‘of these’; lit.? **arcessitam**,—agreeing w. *partem*; trans. freely ‘would send for . . . and give.’ App.37. a.X.B. (The perf. partic. does not imply that they had already been sent for, but their summoning would precede their surrender, and the part. takes its time from *datorios*.) **diebus**,—abl. of time *within* which. (RC.S5.b. HF.S2.2.)

7. **suos**,—App.15.c. **agros**,—‘the country districts or the country.’ **principes**,—why cannot this be the object of *convenire*?

CHAP. 28.

The eighteen ships bearing the cavalry set sail a few days later, but as they are nearing Britain are dispersed by a storm, and driven back to the mainland.

1. **His rebus**,—‘by this means’; lit.? **post...ventum**,—‘on the fourth day after he came,’ or as we should say ‘three days after.’ for the Romans in reckoning from one day to another counted in the days at both extremes, where we include but one. [The expression was probably once *post die quarto quam*, *post* being an adverb; thus the meaning was, ‘later, on the fourth day, than,’ etc.; but through some confusion *post* was treated as a preposition requiring the accus. As it stands the expression has no grammatical explanation.] **est ventum**,—for the impersonal pass. see App. 24. (RC. 93.b. HF. 164. 2.) **demonstratum est**,—another impers. pass.; ‘mention has been made.’ **sustulerat**,—here means ‘had taken on board.’ **superiore**,—the same as that called *ulteriorem* in c. 23. § 1. **vento**,—trans. by ‘with.’ For the case see RC. 85.o.iv. HF. 102.3.x.

2. **viderentur**,—‘were in sight.’ **posset**,—trans. as in App. 30. So *referrentur* and *dejicerentur*. For the mood see RC. 99.b. HF. 187. 2. **aliae...aliae**,—see Vocabulary for the meaning when repeated. **eodem**,—adverb. **inferiorem**,—i.e. towards the southwest. **quae**,—refers to *partem*, not *insulae*. **sui**,—freely ‘to themselves.’ (RC. 81.d.)

3. **quae tamen**, etc.,—‘and as (=cum) these, having nevertheless [i.e. in spite of the danger] cast anchor, were filling,’ or more freely, ‘had...and were,’ App. 5.a.iii. [Or *tamen* may be taken as meaning ‘however,’ which would be the first word in the sentence.] **cum**,—App. 31.fn. **necessario...profectae...petierunt**,—freely ‘they were compelled to put out...and make for’; lit.? **adversa nocte**,—lit. ‘the night meeting them,’ abl. absol.; freely ‘in the face of the night’ or ‘into the night.’

CHAP. 29.

The same storm does great damage to the vessels in which Caesar's troops had crossed, and causes great alarm in his camp.

1. **esset**,—‘there was.’ For the mood see RC.99.b. HF. 182.4., 187.2. **qui dies**,—‘a time (or period) which.’ App. 11.d.iv. **maritimos**, etc.,—‘very high tides.’ **consuevit**,—‘is wont,’ or trans. more freely by ‘usually.’ **incognitum**,—the soldiers knew little of any sea but the Mediterranean, where the tides are insignificant, while at Dover they are 20 or 30 feet high.

2. **uno**,—as in c.23. § 6. **naves...aestus complebat**,—trans. by changing the voice; see App. 23. So **onerarias tempestas afflictabat**. **quibus**,—‘in (lit. with) which.’ **transportandum**,—‘to be bought over’; gerundive agreeing w. **exercitum**. (RC.104.c. HF.173.7.) **ad**,—‘at.’

neque ulla,—‘and no’; lit.? **administrandi, auxiliandi**,—the former of those on board, the latter of those on shore. In trans., add ‘them’ as object of the former.

3. **fractis**,—trans. abl. absol. by clause with ‘as,’ adding ‘and’ as connective; with this free rendering *cum*=‘as’ need not be repeated in trans. **amissis**,—freely ‘having lost.’ **magna**, etc.,—lit. ‘great alarm of the whole army was caused, a thing which it was necessary should happen.’ freely ‘great alarm inevitably (or as was inevitable) arose throughout’ etc. **quod**,—the subject of *accidere* not of *nevesse erut*. **exercitus**,—lit. ‘of,’ that is ‘on the part of.’

4. **Neque**,—trans. freely by ‘no’; lit.? **possent**,—App.31. For the mood see RC.99.c. HF.188.4. **deerant**,—from *desum*. **reficiendas**,—gerundive construction. App. 10. **usui**,—‘of service,’ lit.? App. 3.c. (RC.82.c. HF.134.1.)

omnibus constabat,—‘it was generally agreed’; *omnibus*, dative, more lit. ‘among all.’ **hiemari oportere**,—impers.

pass.; freely, 'that they must winter'; App.24. (RC.96.b. HF.164.2.) **in hiemem**,—trans. *in* by 'for.'

CHAP. 30.

Learning of these misfortunes, the Britons who had submitted decide to renew the war, and secretly gather forces.

1. **principes**,—subj. of *duxerunt* in § 2. **inter se**,—'with one another'; cf. c. 25. § 5. **collocuti**,—best to trans. as in App.37.a.x.b.

Romanis deesse,—freely 'that the Romans were without' etc.; lit.? **quae**,—referring to *castrorum*, and introducing a parenthesis which has nothing to do with the Britons' plans or arguments. **hoc angustiora**,—lit. 'more contracted to this extent *or* for this reason'; freely, 'all the smaller.' For the abl. see RC.85.g.ii.

2. **optimum facta**,—'the best thing to do'; predicate of *esse*. For *factu* see RC.105.b. HF.175. **duxerunt**,—'concluded, thought.' **rebellione facta**,—trans. by act. infin. co-ordinate with *prohibere*; App.5.a.iii. *Rebellionem facere*, freely, 'to renew the war'; lit.? **frumento**,—for the case see RC.85.h. HF.158.2. **prohibere, producere**,—the subj. of *esse*. (RC.101.c. HF.108.4.) **rem**,—'the campaign.'

superatis,—App.5.a.ii; trans. by clause with 'if.' **reditu**,—see on *frumento* above. **inferendi**,—App. 40.

This long sentence (more characteristic of Latin than of English) may be conveniently broken up into four in translating. (a) *Quibus . . . collocuti* represents the first step taken; (b) *cum equites . . . cognoscerent* gives the condition of affairs that influenced them, with *quae . . . transportaverat* added as a parenthetical explanation; (c) *optimum . . . producere* gives the course they resolved on; (d) *quod . . . confidebant*, their expectations in adopting this course. As for

connectives, in (b) none is needed, disregard *cum* and subj., and trans. as if indic.; (c) may be introduced by 'therefore, or accordingly'; in (d) replace *quod* by 'for.'

3. **rursus**,—not implying that they had once before formed a league, but merely indicating a change in their course of action. **agris**,—with the same meaning as in c. 27. § 7.

CHAP. 31.

Caesar, becoming suspicious, collects provisions in the camp and repairs the shattered fleet.

1. **ex eventu navium**,—lit. 'from the fate (or experience) of his ships,' freely, 'from what had happened to his ships.' **ex eo quod**,—'from the fact that'; lit? **fore**, etc.,—'suspected (or began to suspect) that that would happen which (actually or in fact) did occur.' [*Quod accidit* did not form part of his thoughts, hence the indic. not the subj. (RC.11.215.e. HF.207.4.N.2.)] **ad**,—'for, or to meet.' **subsidia**,—'resources.'

2. **quae...naves, earum**,—freely, 'of the ships which had been,' etc. See App. 11. d. iv. **materia**,—for the case cf. on *genere*, c. 24. § 1. **reficiendas**,—App. 40. **quae**,—lit. 'what things,' freely, 'whatever.' **res**,—'purpose.' **continenti**,—for the form of the abl. see RC.49.c. HF.40.

3. **cum....administraretur**,—impers. pass., App. 24; freely, 'as the soldiers worked'; lit? cf. c. 23. § 2. **studio**,—for the case see RC.85.e. HF.71.3. **amissis**,—trans. by clause with 'although.' **reliquis....effecit**,—lit. 'he brought it about (or managed) that there could be sailing satisfactorily with the rest'; freely, 'he made it possible to sail,' etc. **navigari**,—impers. pass., App. 24. **posset**,—for the mood see RC.99.b. HF.187.2.

CHAP. 32.

A legion out foraging is surprised and surrounded by the Britons. Caesar goes to its relief.

1. **dum...geruntur**,—cf. on *moratur*, c.22. § 1. **ex consuetudine**,—‘according to custom’; freely, ‘as usual.’ **frumentatum**,—trans. supine by infin. with ‘to’; (RC.105.a. HF.174.3.) **missa**,—trans. by ‘when’; so *interposita*. **neque ulla**,—trans. as in c. 29. § 2. **ad**,—‘up to.’ **interposita**,—freely, ‘had arisen’; more lit. ‘had intervened,’ *i.e.* between the time of the surrender and the present. **cum**,—‘as *or* since’; explaining the clause *neque...interposita*. **hominum**,—‘of the natives.’ **ventitaret**,—trans. by ‘kept’; (RC.75.III. HF.303.a.)

consuetudo ferret,—lit. ‘custom allowed’; freely, ‘was customary *or* usual.’ For the mood see RC.99.e.iii. HF.206.4. **in ea...partem**,—‘was visible in the direction in which’; lit.? App.11.d.ii.

2. **id quod erat**,—lit. ‘that which existed’; freely, ‘as was actually the case’; *id* is object of *suspiciatus* and is explained by *aliquid...consilii*. **aliquid consilii**,—trans. gen. as in App.2.d. (RC.81.b.i. HF.69.10.) **initum**,—supply *esse*. **in stationibus**,—‘on guard’; the plur. because there was a cohort at each of the four gates. **in stationem succedere**,—‘to take their place on guard.’ *or* more freely, ‘to relieve them’; the sing. of the general idea of guarding. **reliquas**,—how many would these be? See Introduction p. xvi. for the size of the legion and the cohort. **armari**,—‘to arm themselves’; for this use of the pass. see RC.96.c.

3. **paulo longius**,—‘some little distance’; cf. c. 26. § 5. App.10. (RC.88.b.) **suos**,—subject of *premi* and *sustinere*. App.15.c. **sustinere**,—‘were holding their own *or* their ground.’ **conferta legione**,—trans. by ‘as,’ giving the reason for *ex omnibus partibus* which goes with *conjici*.

4. **demesso**,—trans. by clause with ‘because’, coordinate with *erat reliqua*, inserting ‘and.’ **erat reliqua**,—‘remained.’ lit.? **hostes**,—nominative.

5. **dispersos, depositis, occupatos**,—trans. by clauses introduced by ‘when’ and connected by ‘and.’ **adorti**,—trans. by a principal clause coordinate with *perturbaverant*, inserting ‘and.’ **incertis ordinibus**,—abl. absol.; trans. by ‘as.’ giving the reason for *perturbaverant*. The meaning is that it was difficult for the men to find their own cohorts. **simul**,—‘(and) at the same time.’

CHAP. 33.

A description of the British mode of fighting with chariots.

1. **Genus**,—‘manner,’ subj. of *est, hoc* being predicate. **per omnes partes**,—‘in all directions,’ lit.? **ipso terrore equitum**,—‘by the very (or mere) terror caused by their horses.’ lit.? for the gen. see RC.81.c. **equitum**,—their own, not their opponents’, so that after the warriors on the chariots had dismounted, footsoldiers and cavalry alternated on the British side. Caesar, it will be remembered, had no cavalry with him.

2. **ita**,—‘in such a way.’ **illi**,—‘the others’ (see App.18.b.) *i.e.* those who had dismounted to fight on foot. **premuntur**,—trans. by ‘should’; for the mood see RC.II.83.2. HF.193. II.b. **suos**,—App.15.c. **habeant**,—trans. by Eng. pres. indic. or by ‘would.’ For the mood see RC.99.b. HF.187.2.

3. **Ita**,—‘thus.’ **tantum efficiunt**,—freely, ‘become so proficient’: lit.? **uti consuerint**,—App.30. RC.99.b. HF.187.2.) For the form of the verb see on c. 21. § 1. **loco**,—‘ground.’ **brevi**,—adverb. **per**,—‘along.’ **citissime**,—App.10.

CHAP. 34.

On Caesar's approach the Britons withdraw, and spend the next few days, during which storms prevent further fighting, in collecting larger forces.

1. **Quibus rebus**,—abl. of means with *perturbatis*, which agrees with *nostris*. **nostris**,—may be either dative with *auxilium tulit* or abl. absolute; in the former case trans. *perturbatis* by a relative clause, as in App.37.c. **novitate**,—trans. by 'because of.' (RC.85.m. HF.71.3.)

2. **Quo facto**,—trans. by clause with 'although,' or more freely 'in spite of this.' **lacedendum, committendum**,—gerundives, connected w. *alienum* not w. *facto*. App.40. **suo loco**,—'on his own ground.' (RC.85.a.ii.g.) **brevi.... intermisso**,—freely, 'after a short interval'; lit.?

3. **haec**,—referring to the sudden attack, c.32. § 5, not to the words immediately preceding. **occupatis**,—trans. by 'while': it refers to the return to the camp, the care of the wounded, etc. **qui**,—'those who,' App.11.d.i. The reference is to the Britons spoken of in c. 32. § 1. *pars.... remaneret*. **erant reliqui**,—as in c. 32. § 4. **discesserunt**,—i.e. from the country districts to their strongholds.

4. **Secutae sunt**,—trans. as in App.1. N.B. **quae...continereut**,—trans. as if indic. For the mood see RC.99.c. HF.188.4.

5. **partes**,—this would be to places farther away than the *agris* of § 3. **quanta**,—lit. 'how great'; freely, 'how favorable or what.' **faciendae**,—App. 40; 'for obtaining'; for the gen. see App.2.c. **sui liberandi**,—'for freeing themselves.' For the syntax see RC.II.134. **daretur**,—trans. as if indic. (RC.99.d. HF.176.2.) **castris**,—for the case cf. on *frumento*, c.30. § 2. **expulissent**,—'drove.' For the explanation of both mood and tense see on *adisset* c. 20. § 2.

6. **His rebus**,—as in c.28. § 1.

CHAP. 35.

When the Britons come against his camp, Caesar meets them and routs them with great slaughter.

1. **idem**....fore,—‘that the same thing would happen.’ **acciderat**,—on the mood see on *accidit*, c. 31. § 1. **ut**....**effugerent**,—‘namely that....they would escape’; explanatory of *idem*. For the mood see RC.101.b.v. HF.217.5. **si**,—‘even if.’ **essent pulsi**—for the explanation of both mood and tense see on *adisset*, c. 20. § 2. **naetus**,—trans. by clause with ‘as.’ **dictum est**,—impers. pass., App.24; trans. personally in either active or pass.

2. **diutius**,—‘any longer,’ *i.e.* than the beginning of the battle. **ac**,—in English we might use ‘but,’ as well as ‘and.’

3. **tanto spatio**,—lit. ‘within (*or over*) as great a space’; freely, ‘as far.’ **quantum**, etc.,—lit. ‘as they could cover with speed and strength’; freely, ‘as their speed and strength allowed.’ For the declension of *viribus* see RC.9. HF.45. **complures**,—accus.

CHAP. 36.

Having received the enemy's submission, Caesar returns to Gaul, as the summer was now over.

1. **de**,—as in c. 27. § 1.

2. **His**,—‘for these,’ dative with *duplicavit*. **die**,—‘the time *or* the season.’ **propinqua die**, **infirmis navibus**,—App.5.a.X.; trans. by ‘as,’ connecting the two clauses by ‘and.’ **subjiciendam**,—supply *esse*; trans. as in App. 41. (RC.104.a. HF.173.5.)

3. **mediam noctem**,—‘midnight.’

4. **quae**,—referring to *naves*; if ‘ships’ has not been used in translating *naves solvit*, trans. *quae* by ‘the ships.’ **eosdem**,—with *portus*. **quos reliqui**,—lit. ‘which the other (crews reached)’; freely, ‘as the others.’ The masc. is due to the thought of the men rather than of their vessels being uppermost. **infra**,—*i.e.* towards the southwest.

CHAP. 37.

Some three hundred of the Romans after landing, are attacked by the Morini, but are rescued by Caesar.

1. **Quibus**,—*i.e.* the two mentioned in c. 36. § 4 **castra**,—that of Sulpicius Rufus, c. 22. § 6. **proficiscens**,—‘on setting out.’ (RC.102.*a*. HF.100.4.) **primo**,—adverb. **non ita magno**,—freely, ‘with not a very large’; lit.? **si....nolent**,—‘if they did not wish to be killed’: *sese* is subj. of *interfici*. (RC.II.22.) For the mood of *nolent* see RC.99.*h*.iii. HF.206.4; for the tense see on *adisset* c. 20. § 2.

2. **ad clamorem**,—‘at (or in answer to) the shouts.’ **hominum**,—as in c. 32. § 1. **suis auxilio**,—lit. ‘as aid for his men,’ freely, ‘to aid his men.’ (RC.82.*c*. HF.134.1.)

3. **amplius horis**,—‘more than....hours.’ [*Horis* may be the abl. of comparison, equivalent to *quam horas*, (RC. 85.*f*. HF.55.5), or the omission of *quam* may, as is customary with *amplius*, have no effect on the case (RC.II.123.*c*. 2.), and *horis* be the abl. of time within which (RC.85.*b*.iv.)] **paucis**,—‘but a few.’ **his**,—‘them,’ referring to *hostium*.

4. **postea....quam**,—also written as one word. It refers to *primo*, § 1.

CHAP. 38.

After crushing this uprising of the Morini, Caesar makes his arrangements for the winter-camps of his troops.

1. **rebellionem fecerant**,—as in c. 30. § 2.

2. **siccitates**,—the plural to conform to *paludum*; trans. by the singular. The trans. should be so arranged that *paludum* will come just before *quo superiore....usi*. **quo....haberent**,—lit. ‘had not whither they should retreat’; freely, ‘had no place to which to retreat.’ For the mood of *reciperent* see RC.II.25. HF.184.1.N. **quo perfugio**, etc.,—

referring to *paludum*; *quo* agrees in gender and number with *perfurio* instead of with *paludum*. Trans. 'which they had used as,' etc. *factant usi*,—on the form see RC. 97.g.iii. *in potestatem pervenerunt*,—freely, 'fell into the hands.'

3. *in silvas*,—we say 'in,' but the Latin expresses *motion towards*.

4. *legionum*,—trans. freely by 'for.' *Eo*,—adverb. *neglexerunt*,—add in trans. 'to do so.'

5. *His rebus*,—referring to all the events of the summer's campaign, that is to all the contents of Bk. IV. *ex litteris Caesaris*,—'in accordance with (or in consequence of) despatches from Caesar.' *dierum*,—trans. either by Eng. possessive form or freely by 'for.' For the case see RC.81.e. HF. 130.8. *supplicatio*,—'a public thanksgiving' celebrated by solemn sacrifices in the temples at Rome. Two years before Caesar had been voted a *supplicatio* for fifteen days, 'an honor,' he writes, 'which up to that time no one had received.'



NOTES ON BOOK V.—CHAP. 1-23.

Caesar's second expedition to Britain.

CHAP. 1.

Caesar orders more vessels to be built; he then spends the winter in attending to the affairs of his two other provinces.

1. **L. Domitio..consulibus**,—freely, 'in the consulship of'; lit.? App.5.a.N. (RC.II.50. HF.102.3.N.) The Romans regularly indicated the year by the names of the chief magistrates. **discedens**,—cf. *proficiscens*, IV. c. 37 § 1. **Italiam**,—by this is meant the province of *Gallia Cisalpina* or *Citerior*, in which Caesar spent each winter, attending to its administration. **ut**,—'as.' **consuerat**,—cf. on IV.c. 24. § 1.

imperat..uti..curarent,—App.29.b. (RC.99.a.2. HF.181. 3.) **quam plurimas possent**,—'as many as possible or as they could'; for mood see RC.99.e. HF.206.4. **aedificandas curarent**,—freely, 'have built.' Cf.IV.29. § 2. (RC.104.c. HF.173.7.)

2. **Earum**,—the new ones only. **Ad**,—'for.' **onerandi**,—App.39; trans. gen. by 'in,' App.2.c. **quam quibus**,—'than those which,' supplying *eas* before *quibus*; cf. App. 11.d.i. **nostro mari**,—the Mediterranean, a name of later origin.

id eo magis,—lit. 'he does) that the more because of this'; freely, 'all the more so.' **minus magnos**,—'smaller.' **fieri**,

—‘are caused.’ **ad. transportandam**,—App.40. The gerundive is to be taken with both nouns, but agrees with the nearer. (RC.79.b.i.) **reliquis maribus**,—the various parts of the Mediterranean, each having its own name among the Romans.

3. **actuarias**,—*i.e.* swift galleys, impelled by oars as well as by sails; the larger ships of the Gauls had sails only; cf. on IV.c.25. § 1. **fieri**,—the infin. is rare with *impero*, and in Caesar found only with pass. or deponent verbs. **quam ad rem**,—‘for which.’ **humilitas adjuvat**,—because of the greater ease in rowing.

4. **ea quae**,—‘what or whatever’; cf. IV. c. 31. § 2.

5. **conventibus**,—the governor of a province acted also as its judge. **Galliae citerioris, Illyricum**,—two of the three provinces under Caesar; see Introduction, p.ix. and the map on p.xi. **fluitimam**,—*i.e.* next to the *Pirustae*. **audiebat**,—‘he heard’; the imperfect because the news came to him more than once.

6. **Eo**,—*i.e.* to Illyricum. **cum venisset**,—freely, ‘coming.’ **imperat**,—see on IV. c. 22. § 2.

7. **Qua re**,—‘this.’ **qui doceant**,—App.11.c.; for mood see RC.99.a.1. HF.184.1. **nihil**,—freely, ‘none’; lit. ? **rerum**,—‘acts,’ *i.e.* the raids. **seseque**,—*que* couples *mittunt* (not *doceant*) with *demonstrant*, which here implies ‘through their ambassadors.’ **omnibus rationibus**,—‘in every way’; lit. ?

8. **eorum**,—App.12.b.x.b.; the ambassadors. **eos**,—the hostages. **ad**,—‘by.’ **fecerint**,—perf. subj., lit. ‘they shall have done’; freely, ‘they do.’ For the subj. (representing the fut. perf. indic.) see RC.99.b.iii. HF.206.1. A perfect tense is used because their failure must precede their punishment.

9. **ad diem**,—‘by the (appointed) day.’ **ut**,—as in § 1. **dat**,—‘appoints.’ **qui**, etc.,—cf. on *qui doceant*, § 7.

CHAP. 2.

Returning in the spring, he orders the fleet and army to assemble for the passage to Britain, then goes to the country of the Treveri, whose loyalty was suspected.

1. *ad exercitum*,—see IV. c. 38. § 4. *profleiscitur*,—this was in the spring.

2. *circuitis*,—App.5.a.iii. *studio*,—belongs to *instructas*. *in summa inopia*,—‘(although) amidst,’ etc., or freely, ‘although there was,’ etc. *sescentas*,—with *naves*, which is to be repeated with *longas*. *cujus*,—‘which,’ translating as if it were *quod*. [It may be that there is an ‘attraction’ of the relative into agreement with the *case* also of its antecedent, or that there is an ellipse of *generis naves*.]

neque multum, etc.,—lit. ‘and that it is not far from this point that they cannot’ etc., there being a redundant negative; freely, ‘and that they are almost ready to be launched.’ For the subj. with *quin* see RC.99.b.i. HF.185.2. *diebus*,—time *within* which.

3. *Collaudatis*,—with both *militibus* and *iis*. *praeferant*,—from *praesum*. *quid fieri velit*,—cf. on IV.c. 23. § 5. *omnes*,—understand *naves*. *portum Itium*,—the exact locality is unknown. *quo ex portu*,—App.11.d.ii. *millium passuum*,—lit. ‘of thousands of paces’; the words are not in agreement. For the case of *passuum* cf. on IV. c.22. § 4.; for that of *millium* see RC.81.e. HF.130.8. *continenti*,—for the form cf. on IV.c.31. § 2.

huic rei,—‘for this purpose.’ *i.e.* for ensuring the safe-bringing of the fleet to the appointed place. *quod militum*,—lit. ‘what (amount) of soldiers,’ App.2.d; freely, ‘what force’; *quod* is subj. of *visum est*.

4. *neque..veniebant*,—‘did not come’; for the tense see App.26.a.iv. *concilia*,—assemblies which Caesar had established among the conquered tribes as a means of keeping them in official relations with himself. *sollicitare*,—‘to be stirring up.’

CHAP. 3.

Of the two rival chiefs, one, Cingetorix, attaches himself to Caesar; the other, Indutiomarus, at first prepares for war, then in fear makes advances to Caesar.

1. **Hæc**,—of the Treveri. **plurimum**,—adverb. **equitatu**,—trans. by 'in.' (RC.85.d.) **Rhenum tangit**,—the importance of this is seen from the last words of c.2. **ut**,—as in c. 1. § 1.

2. **inter se**,—'with each other'; lit.?

3. **alter**,—lit. 'the one'; freely, 'the latter.' Cingetorix was his rival's son-in-law. **cognitum est**,—cf. on *dictum est*, IV. c. 35. § 1. **in officio**,—'true to their allegiance'; lit.? **populi**,—trans. by 'with,' not 'of.' **gererentur**,—RC.99.d. HF.176.2.

4. **eogere**,—depending on *instituit*, and connected by *que* with *parare*. **his abditis**,—App. 5.a. **per**,—by reason of.' **in silvam**,—cf. on IV. c. 38. § 3. **ingenti magnitudine**,—modifying *quæ*; freely '(was) of vast extent (and).' (RC. 85.c. HF.131.9.) **medios fines**,—freely, 'the midst of,' etc.; lit.?

5. **ex**,—'of.' **et . . . et**,—lit. 'both . . . and'; or freely, 'partly . . . partly.' Cingetorigis,—trans. gen. as with *populi*, § 3.

de suis rebus petere,—'seek their own advantage'; lit.? **privatim**,—the position makes it almost equal to the adj. *privatis*. **civitati**,—trans. by 'for'; (RC.II.59.) It is opposed to *suis privatim rebus*. **possent**,—the mood decides whether this represents the reasoning of the writer or of the *principes*; (RC.99.g.i.) **ne . . . descerneretur**,—'lest he should or that he might,' etc. (RC.II.154. HF.185.3.4.)

6. **Sese**,—subj. of *noluisse*; these words depend on the notion of stating implied in *legatos mittit*; in trans. supply

'who say or these say.' **idcirco**,—trans. just before *quo*.... *laberetur*, by which it is explained.

quo,—'that,' w. clause of purpose, App.29.*a*. (RC.II.26. HF.183.5.) **discessu**,—abl. of time when (with causal idea also); trans. by 'on.' **ne**....*laberetur*,—'lest....should,' etc. (RC.99.*a*.1. HF.183.2.)

7. **permitteret**,—'would permit.' The direct form would be in the present subj. (RC.II.87. HF.209.2.) **suas, civitatis**,—both modify *fortunas*. **fidei**,—dative.

CHAP. 4.

Caesar becomes reconciled to Indutiomarus, who however soon takes offence at the favor shown his rival Cingetorix.

1. **qua de causa**,—'for what reason.' **dicerentur, diceret**,—RC.99.*d*. HF.176.2. **instituto**,—'original'; lit.? **omnibus...comparatis**,—goes closely with the preceding clause; trans. by 'when.'

2. **in**—'among.' **filio**, etc,—in apposition with *his*. **evocaverat**,—the subj. is Caesar. **consolatus (est)**,—because of the enforced exile (as hostages) of himself and his kinsmen. **uti maneret**,—cf. on IV. c. 21. § 6.

3. **hos**,—*i.e.* the *principibus*, who had previously favored Indutiomarus. **quod**,—conj. **cum...tum**,—'not only.... but also.' **merito...fieri**,—impers. pass.; lit. 'that it was being done by him (Caesar) according to his (Cingetorix') desert'; freely. 'that he was doing as he deserved.'

magni interesse,—'that it was of great importance.' **ejus...ejus**,—'of one whose'; trans. the relative clause immediately after *ejus*. **suos**,—referring to *ejus*, not to *se*. **quam plurimum valere**,—'should be as great as possible'; an infin. clause subj. of *interesse*. (RC.101.*c*. HF.108.4.) On *quam* with superl. see RC.88.*b*. HF.143.*N*. In c.1. § 1. it is used with *possum*. **tam**,—better omitted in trans.; lit.? **perspexisset**,—for subj. see RC.99.*g*.iii. HF.198.4.

4. **Id factum**,—explained by *suam...minui*, ‘that...should be lessened.’ **qui fuisset**,—‘whereas (or while) he had been.’ (RC.99.g.iii. HF.198.4.) **amino**,—trans. by ‘of.’ (RC.85.e. HF.131.9.) **hoc dolore**,—freely, ‘at this grievance.’ (RC. 85.m. HF.71.3.)

CHAP. 5.

Coming to the sea port, Caesar finds the fleet and army ready.

2. **rejecetas—potuisse**,—trans. as if it were *rejecetas esse et...potuisse*. App.37.a.N.B. **omnibus rebus**,—freely, ‘in all respects.’

3. **numero**,—abl., ‘in number.’ (RC.85.d.) **millium quattuor**,—depending on *equitatus*; for the syntax see RC.81.e. HF.130.8.; trans. as if in agreement, or freely, ‘to the number of four thousand.’

4. **obsidum loco**,—‘as hostages’; lit.? **cum abesset**,—lit. ‘when he should be absent’; freely, ‘while he was absent,’ or ‘in his absence.’

CHAP. 6.

Dumnorix, a disaffected and ambitious Gaul, refuses to accompany Caesar to Britain, and tries to keep other Gauls from going.

1. **Erat**,—App.1.N.B. **ante**,—in Bk. I. Four years before he had aroused hostility to Caesar among the Aedui, but had been pardoned for his brother’s sake. Ever since he had been carefully watched. **dictum est**,—cf. IV.e.35. § 1. **in primis**,—see Vocabulary. **cum**,—supply *esse* depending on *cognoverat*. **anixi**,—‘of pride.’ For the gen. see RC.81.e. HF.130.7.; so *auctoritatis*.

2. **accedebat huc quod**,—lit. ‘to this there came also (i.e. was added) the fact that’; freely, ‘besides this.’ (RC. 109.i. HF.181.2.) **deferri**,—notice the tense. **dictum**,—‘statement.’ **neque**,—‘but yet...not.’

3. **Id**,—referring to both parts of § 2. **factum**,—supply *esset*. **Ille**,—*i.e.* Dumnorix; trans. as in App.18.*b*. **omnibus**,—‘all manner of.’ **petere contendit**,—freely, ‘sought earnestly’; lit. ? **insuetus**,—‘being unaccustomed to,’ etc. **timeret, diceret**,—trans. by past tense of indie. For *timeret* see RC.99.*g.i.* HF.198.2; for *diceret*, RC.II.220.*b*.

4. **id**,—his request. **sibi**,—indirect object; trans. without ‘to.’ **spe adempta**,—trans. by clause with ‘as.’

5. **territare**,—the historical infin.; trans. as in App.36. (RC.101.*d.* HF.216.3.N.2.) **fleri**,—depends on the idea of saying implied in *metu territare*; so *esse*; in trans. supply ‘saying.’ **nobilitate**,—trans. abl. by ‘of.’ (RC.85.*h.* HF.158.2.) **spoliaretur**,—‘was being,’ etc. (RC.99.*b.ii.* HF.182.4.)

quos...vereretur,—trans. after the antecedent *hos*; for subj. see RC.99.*e.* HF.206.4. **ut...traductos necaret**,—freely, ‘to carry over...and kill’; lit. ? (RC.II.52.*c.* HF.219.2.*a.e.*)

6. **reliquis**,—*i.e.* all others than himself. **interponere, poscere**,—see on *territare*, § 5. **quod**,—rel. pron. **intellexissent**,—for tense and mood see on *imperasset*, IV. c. 22. § 1. **ut...administrarent**,—App.29. *b.* (RC.99.*a.2.* HF.181.3.) **deferebantur**,—imperf. because information was given repeatedly and by different persons.

CHAP. 7.

Caesar takes measures to check disaffection. Dumnorix on the eve of Caesar's departure, leaves the camp secretly, but is overtaken and slain.

1. **tantum dignitatis**,—App.2. *d.* **Aeduae**,—adj. with *civitati*. **coercendum**,—supply *esse*; App.41. **rebus**,—trans. by ‘means.’ **posset**,—RC.99.*e.* HF.206.4.

2. **longius**,—‘still farther,’ *i.e.* farther than had yet appeared. **prospiciendum**,—depending on *statuebat*; *impers.*

pass., App.24. **quid nocere**,—‘do any harm’; for the accus. *quid* see RC.83.e. **sibi**,—Caesar. **posset**,—trans by ‘should’; the subj. is Dumnorix (or possibly *amentia*); for the mood see RC.99.a. HF.183.2.

3. **commoratus**,—though perf., trans. here ‘while waiting’ or ‘as he was waiting.’ RC.102.c.vi. **qui**,—referring to *ventus*. **partem**,—App.4.c. (RC.83.c. HF.69.9.) **ut con-
tineret**,—App.29.b; so *cognosceret*. (RC.99.a. HF.181.3.)

4. **milites**,—here equivalent to *pedites*.

5. **impeditis**,—‘while... were occupied.’ **inseiente Cae-
sare**,—‘without Caesar’s knowledge’; lit.? App.5.a.N. **domum**,—‘(for) home’; for accus. see RC.II.93.a. HF.85.1.

6. **omnibus rebus**,—‘everything else.’ **insequendum**,—App.40; trans. by infin. with ‘to.’ **retrahi**,—see on *feri*, c. 1. § 3.

7. **faciat**,—‘should offer’ or freely, ‘offers.’ **nihil**,—obj. of *facturum*. **hunc**,—‘he’; subj. of *facturum*. **se absente**,—‘in his (*i.e.* Caesar’s) absence’ lit.? App.5.a.N. **qui... neg-
lexisset**,—‘seeing that he,’ etc. For the mood see on *pers-
pexisset* c. 4. § 3. **praesentis**,—lit. ‘(of him) while being
present,’ depending on *imperium*; freely, ‘in his presence.’

8. **Ille**,—as in c.6. § 3. **enim**,—‘now’ or ‘in fact.’ **manu**,—*i.e.* with a weapon. **clamitans**,—a frequentative verb. here expressing *vehement* action. (RC.75.III. HF.303.a.) **liberum
liberaeque civitatis**,—two predicates of *se esse*; with the
gen. may be supplied in trans. ‘a citizen.’ (RC.81.b. HF.69.
10.)

9. **erat imperatum**,—impers. pass. App.24. **omnes**,—pre-
dicatively, ‘all together,’ ‘in a body.’

CHAP. 8.

Caesar crosses over to Britain and lands unopposed.

1. **continente**,—for the usual form see on IV.c.31. § 2.
equitum,—App.2.d. **quaeque**,—two words. **pro tempore**

et pro re,—‘as time and circumstances suggested’; lit. ‘in accordance with,’ etc.

2. **pari...quem**, freely, ‘the same...as’; lit.? **ad**,—‘about.’ **provectus**,—trans. as if *provectus est*, supplying ‘but’ before the next clause. App.37.*a.N.B.* **intermisso**,—‘having fallen.’ **longius**,—‘too far.’ (RC.88.*b.*) **orta luce**,—‘at sunrise’; lit.? **sub sinistra**,—‘on the left hand.’

3. **ut...caperet**,—App.29.*b.* **qua**,—adverb. **aestate**,—with *cognoverat*.

4. **laudanda**,—‘deserving of praise’; (RC.104. HF.172.2.) **vectoriis**,—adj. with *navigiis*; abl. of means. **gravibusque**,—‘and that too (*or* and besides) heavily-laden’; the transports would always be slow, but more so when heavily laden.

non intermisso,—freely, ‘without relaxing’; App.5.*a.N.* end. **adaequarunt**,—*adaequaverunt*. (RC.66.)

5. **Accessum est...navibus**,—impers. passive; App.24; freely, ‘the ships drew near (*or* reached)’; lit.? **navibus**,—abl. of means. **meridiano tempore**,—express by one word in English. **neque hostis**,—‘but no enemy.’ **est visus**,—‘was in sight’; so *erant visae*, § 6.

6. **ut**,—as in e.1. § 1. **cum**,—as in IV.c.27. § 5. For the subj. see RC.99.*i.iii.* HF.204.5. **perterritae ... discesse-rant**,—App.37.*a.N.B.* **quae cum annotinis**,—‘of which, including those of the previous year...there were,’ etc. *Quae* is nom., lit. ‘which were,’ etc., the idea not being strictly partitive; *annotinis* (*navibus*) are the same as those called *veteres* in e.1. § 1.

quisque,—‘each,’ but probably restricted to rich officers and Gallic nobles. **sui commodi**,—‘for his own convenience.’ (RC.II.117.*c.*) **amplius**,—‘more than,’ without influencing the ease of *octingentae*. (RC.II.123.*c.2.*) **in**,—as in e.3. § 4.

CHAP. 9.

Leaving a strong guard with the ships, Caesar advances into the interior and drives the enemy from one of their strongholds.

1. **castris**,—trans. dat. by 'for.' **ubi...cognovit**,—freely 'and learning.' **quo in loco**,—trans. by one word. **consedissent**,—RC.99.d. HF.176.2. **relictis**,—trans. by principal verb. App.5.a.iii. **qui...essent**,—'to protect the ships'; lit.? For the dat. see RC.82.c. HF.134.1. For the subj. see RC.99.a.i. HF.181.1. **de tertia vigilia**,—'early in the third watch,' i.e. soon after midnight; *de* seems to imply that a part of the watch has passed.

eo minus,—'the less'; see on *eo magis*, c.1. § 2. **navibus**, trans. dat. by 'for.' (RC.82.b.) **molli**,—'easy'; some think this means 'shingly,' others 'gently rising.' **relinquebat**,—trans. the tense accurately. **praesidio navibusque**,—for dat. see RC.82.b. **praefecit**,—connected by *et* with *contendit*, not (as part of his ground of confidence) with *relinquebat*; trans. as if it were a new sentence, omitting *et*.

3. **equitatu**,—trans. by 'with.' (RC.85.c.i.) **ex loco superiore**,—belongs to the whole clause, and is not to be taken closely with *prohibere* only. 'The north bank was higher than the south.'

4. **egregie**,—with *munitum*. **munitam**,—'fortified,' modifying *locum*. **belli**,—with *causa*. **ut videbantur**,—'as it seemed'; lit.? (RC.II.14.)

6. **ingredi prohibebant**,—see on *egredi prohibebant*, IV. c. 24. § 1. (RC.97.b.ii. HF.216.3.x.i.)

7. **testudine**,—a continuous cover formed by the shields being held above the soldiers' heads so as to overlap, here for the purpose of enabling materials for a mound to be brought up under shelter. **ad**,—'by or close to.' **paucis**,—'but a few.'

S. eos,—*i.e.* the soldiers; object of *veluit*. **fugientes**,—object of *prosequi*; lit. ‘those fleeing’; freely, ‘the fugitives.’ (RC.II.148.*b.*) **longias**,—as in c.8. § 2. **munitioni**,—trans. by ‘for.’ See Introduction, p.xix.*d.*

CHAP. 10.

As troops are setting out the next day in pursuit, news comes of serious damage caused to the fleet by a storm.

1. **Postridie ejus diei**,—lit. ‘on the morrow of that day’; freely, ‘on the next day.’ (RC.81.*i.*) **in expeditionem**,—‘on (lit. for) an expedition’; strictly, a rapid march of troops in light marching order.

2. **His progressis**,—trans. by ‘when,’ replacing *cum* of the next clause by ‘and.’ **aliquantum itineris**,—RC.81.*b.i.* HF.69.10. **extremi**,—‘(only) the last,’ *i.e.* of the troops sent out, not of the enemy. **qui nuntiarent**,—App.29.*b.*Cf. on *qui doceant*, c.1. § 7.

eoorta,—trans. as in App.5.*a.iii.* **neque...neque**,—‘not...and not,’ lit.? **subsisterent, possent**,—RC.99.*g.i.* HF.198.2. **vim**,—for the declension see RC.9. HF.45.

3. **eo concursu**,—lit. ‘that collision,’ *eo* referring to what is implied in *quod neque...possent*; freely, ‘the collision that resulted.’

CHAP. 11.

Caesar returns to the coast, and after making necessary arrangements to repair the losses, once more sets out against the enemy, whose increased forces are now under the command of Cassivellaunos.

1. **itinere desistere**,—‘to give up the march or pursuit,’ not implying that they were to return to the camp. (RC.85.*h.* HF.158.2.)

2. **eadem quae**,—‘the same state of affairs as’; lit.? **coram**,—freely, ‘with his own eyes.’ **sic**,—‘such or of such

a sort,' summing up the idea of the previous words, *eadem*, etc. *amissis*,—'with the loss of,' etc.; lit.? *reliquae posse viderentur*,—lit. 'the rest seemed to be able'; freely, 'it seemed that the rest could'; cf. on *valebantur* c. 9. § 4. For the mood see RC.99.*b*. HF.187.2.

4. *ut instituat*,—App.29.*b*. (RC.99.*a*.2. HF.181.3.) *quam plurimas posset*,—see on c. 1. § 1. *legionibus*,—'by means of' *or* 'with the aid of,' etc.

5. *laboris*,—a stronger word than *operae*, as *ac* shows. (RC.109.*a*.) For the case see RC.81.*e*. HF.130.7. *commo-dissimum*,—'the best thing.' *naves*,—acc. subj. of *subduci* and *conjungi*; trans. by 'for,' or change to active. App.35.*a*.

6. *ne nocturnis*, etc.,—lit. 'not even the night-time being given up for,' etc.; freely, 'not allowing the work to be given up (*or* to stop) even in the night-time.

7. *easdem quas*,—cf. § 2. *praesidio navibus*,—as in c. 9. § 1. *eodem*,—adverb.

8. *summa*,—a noun in abl. absol. with *permissa*. *summa imperii*, etc.,—lit. 'the chief part of the command and of the managing of the war; freely, 'the chief command and oversight of the war'; *administrandi*, a gerundive, goes with *belli* only.

flues,—acc. obj. of *dividit* whose subj. is *flumen*; in trans. change the voice, as in App.23. *a mari*,—*i.e.* from Caesar's landing-place.

9. *Huic cum reliquis*, etc.,—freely, 'between this man and the other states there had arisen'; lit. 'for this man together with,' etc. For the case of *huic* see RC.82.*b*. *bello*,—dative; cf. c. 9. § 1. end.

CHAP. 12.

A description of the people, products, and climate of Britain.

1. *ab iis . . . dicant*,—'by those of whom they themselves state there is a tradition that they were born,' etc., or 'who

were born....as they themselves state is the tradition'; *quos* is the subject of *natos (esse)*; this depends on *proditum (esse)*, which is impersonal and depends on *dicunt*. App.31. [Another reading for *ipsi* is *ipsa* agreeing with *insula*.] *memoria*,—abl. of means.

2. *maritima pars*,—subj. of *incolitur* understood; omit the verb also in English. *praedae*,—with *causa*. *inferendi*,—App.40.

qui omnes,—‘all of whom’; lit.? *iis*,—omit in trans. *quibus ex civitatibus*,—omit the noun in trans. App.11. *d.ii. orti*,—trans. partic. as in App.37.*a.N.B.*

3. *est*,—App.1.*N.B.* *creberrima*,—supply *sunt* from *est*. *fere*,—with *consimilia*. *Gallicis*,—understand *aedificiis*; ‘those of the Gauls.’ All that Caesar tells us of these elsewhere is that they were thatched and generally closely surrounded by trees.

4. *aut....aut*,—freely, ‘partly....partly’; lit.? *ad*,—‘to’ or ‘according to.’ *pro*,—‘as.’

5. *plumbum album*,—referring to the tin mines of Cornwall, which had been worked long before Caesar’s time. Caesar, whose geographical statements are often astray, seems to have mistaken the distant west of which he heard, for an inland district. *ferrum*,—iron was from an early time mined in the south of England, though now chiefly in the north. *ejus*,—referring to *ferrum*. *importato*,—the emphatic word of the clause; freely, ‘the bronze they use is imported.’

eiusque,—from *quisque*; freely ‘every.’ *praeter*,—‘except.’ Caesar’s statement here seems to be quite incorrect.

6. *fas*,—supply *esse*. *haec*,—‘these’; neut. plur., referring to the animals just mentioned. *animi*,—‘amusement.’ *Loca*,—freely, ‘the climate.’ *remissioribus*,—abl. absol. App.5.*a.N.*

CHAP. 13.

The geography of Britain.

1. **natura**,—lit. 'by nature'; freely, 'in shape.' **trique-tra**,—with *insula*; supply *est*. **ejus**,—lit. 'of which'; freely, 'and . . . of it.'

alter,—'one,' subj. of *spectat*; *inferior* takes the place of the corresponding *alter*, (see Vocabulary). **ad**,—'at.' **quo**,—adverb. **appelluntur**,—lit. 'are brought to land'; freely, 'land or put in.'

2. **Alterum**,—supply *latus*, 'the second (side)'; corresponding to *unum* § 1. and *tertium*, § 6. **occidentem solem**,—'the west'; lit.?

qua ex parte,—'in this direction.' **dimidio**,—'by half.' (RC.85.g. HF.58.6.) **pari spatio**, etc.,—lit. 'of the same interval of crossing as (the crossing) is from Gaul to Britain'; freely, 'at the same distance as the passage from Gaul to Britain.' For the abl. *spatio*, see RC.85.c. HF.131.9; *transmissus* is gen. depending on *spatio*. Supply *transmissus* as subj. of *est*.

3. **hoc medio cursu**,—'the middle of this passage,' referring to *pari spatio transmissus*. **Mona**,—probably the Isle of Man is meant, although the name afterwards was given to Anglesea. **subjectae**,—supply *esse*; 'to lie close by.' The reference may be to the Hebrides, or to the Orkney islands. **nonnulli**,—though Caesar was the first Roman to visit Britain, it had been visited and described by Greeks. **sub**,—'at the time of.' **esse**,—the subject is *noctem not dies*.

4. **Nos**,—expressed because contrasted with *nonnulli*, § 3. **de eo**,—'about that matter,' viz. the statement just made. **nisi**, etc.,—'except that,' etc. **ex aqua**,—'by water,' i.e. with a waterclock or *clepsydra*, the only exact means of measuring time mechanically that the Romans had. It was on the principle of the hour glass.

5. **ut fert**, etc.,—‘as their belief goes,’ or more freely, ‘as they believe’; *illorum*, which is emphatic, refers to *nonnulli*, § 3. **milliam**,—‘miles’; *passuum* is understood, being often omitted after the gen. of *millia*. For the gen. see RC.81.e.ii. HF.130.7. Omit ‘of’ in trans.

6. **Tertium**,—supply *latus*; see on *alterum*, § 2. **est objecta**,—‘lies opposite’; lit.? **angulus**,—the same as the *alter angulus* of § 1. in *longitudinem*,—‘in length.’

7. **vicies centum**,—‘two thousand’; lit.?

CHAP. 11.

The manners and customs of the Britons.

1. **qui**,—‘those who,’ App.11.d.i; this relative clause is the subject of *sunt*. **omnis**,—‘entirely’; lit.?

2. **Interiores plerique**,—‘most of those,’ etc.; *plerique* is an adj. agreeing with *interiores*, which is used as a substantive. **lacte, pellibus**,—lit. ‘by means of,’ etc.; trans. respectively by ‘on’ and ‘in.’

quod,—pronoun. **hoc**,—lit. ‘by means of this’; freely, ‘thus.’ **aspectu**,—trans. by ‘in.’ (RC.85.d.)

3. **capillo sunt . . . atque omni parte**,—lit. ‘they are (people) of long hair,’ etc.; freely, ‘they have,’ etc. For the abl. see RC.85.c. HF.131.9.

4. **Uxores communes**,—accus., object of *habent*. **deni duodenique**,—lit. ‘ten and (in other cases) twelve’; freely, ‘in groups of ten or twelve.’ For the distributive numerals (here indicating groups), see RC.58.c. HF.66., 69.8. This statement of Caesar’s has been very generally doubted.

5. **si qui**,—‘if any’; the indef. pron. **habentur liberi**,—‘they are regarded as the children’; *liberi* is predicate nomin. **quo**,—adverb; freely, ‘to whom,’ referring to *eorum*.

CHAP. 15.

As the Romans advance inland, many slight engagements take place, the Romans in one case bring surprised while building a camp. The Romans however are generally successful.

1. *ut*,—here=*ita ut*, 'in such a way that' or 'so that.' *omnibus partibus*,—'everywhere'; lit.? (RC.85.k.ii.) *facrint*,—perf. subj. (RC.99.b. HF.187.2.) For the tense see RC.II.39.

2. *compluribus*,—i.e. of the Britons. *cupidius*,—trans. by 'too.' *ex suis*,—'of their comrades'; App.15.c.

3. *illi*,—App.18.b; the Britons. *intermisso spatio*,—cf. on IV. c. 31. § 2. *imprudentibus*,—trans. by clause with 'while.' *castrorum*,—A camp was made at the end of each day's march. Introduction, p. xix.d.

4. *duabusque*, etc.,—trans. by 'when.' *subsidio*,—dative, App.3.c; freely, 'to their aid'; lit.? (RC.82.c. IIF. 131.1.) *atque his*,—'and these too.' From this it would appear that the first cohort of a legion was its best.

cum,—'although.' *intermisso*,—trans. by 'leaving.' *inter se*,—with *intermisso*. *ново*,—so that these cohorts did not form part of the expedition the year before. *perterritis*,—trans. by 'as' or 'while.'

per medios,—freely, 'through the interval, or between them.' *inde receperunt*,—the last words of the chapter are against taking this as meaning 'got away,' but rather imply that the Britons were bold enough to charge back through the open space.

5. *Illi*,—as in § 3.

CHAP. 16.

Disadvantages under which the Romans lay in fighting with the Britons.

1. *sub oculis*...*pro castris*,—referring to the engagement described in c. 15. §§ 3-5. *dimicaretur*,—impers. pass.;

App.24. **intellectum est**,—on this depends all the rest of the sentence in §§ 1 and 2, through the two infinitive clauses *nostros....esse* and *equites....dimicare*. **nostros**,—referring to the footsoldiers, as the contrast with *equites*, § 2, shows. **armorum**,—Introduction, p. xvii.

cedentes,—acc., object of *insequi*; trans. as in App.38, end. **possent**,—for mood see RC.99.g.i. HF.206.4; so *auderent* and in § 3 *cederent*, *desilirent*, *contenderent*. **auderent**,—they were used to fighting in solid ranks only, and this was here ineffective. **minus**,—‘not well’; App.10. **ad**,—‘for.’

2. **autem**,—‘while’ or ‘on the other hand.’ **illi**,—as in c. 15. § 3; App.18.b. **cum**,—‘whenever’; for the subj. (here in a frequentative clause) see RC.99.f.v. HF.204.4., 206.4. **nostros**,—here the *equites*. **desilirent**,—trans. impf. by ‘would.’ App.26.c. For subj. see RC.99.g.i. HF.206.4. **dispari proelio**,—the inequality was not in armor (for the cavalry was composed of Gauls, who were probably armed much like the Britons), but resulted from the custom of fighting from chariots, described more fully in Bk.IV.c.33.

3. **Equestris**,—genitive. **ratio**,—‘regular method.’ **cedentibus**,—as in § 1. Here probably dat., referring to the Romans. The previous words described the danger when the Romans were in pursuit; we are now told that there was as great danger (from the enemy’s chariots and cavalry) when the Romans were withdrawing or retreating as when they were pursuing. [Some take these words to refer to the Britons, in which case they are in the abl. absol. (one member of the clause being omitted); i.e. ‘whether (the enemy) retreated or advanced.’]

4. **Accedebat huc ut**,—freely, ‘besides this’; see on c.6. § 2. All the following subjunctives are introduced by *ut*, (RC. II.208.II. HF.182.4.) **stationes**,—‘outposts,’ ‘relays.’ **alii alii**,—‘one another’; lit. ? **integrique**,—‘and so unwearied (men or troops).’

CHAP. 17.

The next day the Romans are again attacked, but inflict such a defeat on the Britons that a large part of them disband.

1. **rari**,—‘here and there’; lit. ? **ostendere**,—with *coeperunt*. **lenius**,—‘with less vigor’; referring to *acriter conflixerunt*, c. 15. § 1. **proelio**,—abl. of means.

2. **tres legiones**,—an unusually large force, showing what respect Caesar had for his enemy. **cum**,—freely, ‘under.’ **ad**,—‘upon.’ **sic uti**, etc.,—lit. ‘so that they did not keep away from,’ etc.; freely, ‘so as to attack even the standards.’ etc. That is, the enemy was not afraid to attack even the main body.

3. **quoad**,—‘until,’ or freely, to bring out the idea more clearly, ‘until at last.’ **subsidio**,—trans. abl. by ‘in.’ (RC.85.k.iii.) **egerunt**,—for the mood see RC.99.f.iii. HF. 291.4.

4. **neque . . . neque . . . ant . . . facultatem**,—‘no opportunity of either . . . or . . . or.’ **sui colligendi**,—‘of rallying’; more lit. ‘of collecting themselves.’ For the syntax see RC. II.134.

5. **Ex**,—‘after.’ **quae . . . auxilia**,—*i.e.* the allied forces spoken of in c. 11. §§ 8. 9. **discesserunt**,—‘disbanded.’ **summis copiis**,—‘with their full force.’ **nobiscum**,—for the form see RC. II.7. HF. 105.8.

CHAP. 18.

Caesar forces a passage across the Thames into the country of Cassivellaunus.

1. **consilio**,—this, as we may gather from c. 17. § 5, was to avoid a pitched battle. It is set forth in detail in c. 19. § 1. **Tamesim**,—for the form of the accus. see RC. 49.c. The place of crossing is supposed to have been a few miles west of

London. **quod**,—App.11.b. **hoc**,—‘in this,’ understanding *loco*.

2. **animum advertit**,—with the same meaning as the compound *animadvertit*. **ad**,—‘on.’

3. **praefixis**,—driven into the bank. **defixae**,—driven into the bed of the stream. **tegebantur**,—‘were covered.’

4. **praemisso**,—App.5.a.iii. **confestim**,—with *subsequi*.

5. **ea, eo**,—‘such,’ **eum**,—as in c. 8. § 6. **capite... exstarent**,—‘only their heads were above the water’; lit.? For the subj. see RC.99.i.iii. HF.204.5. **possent**,—RC.99.b. HF.187.2.

CHAP. 19.

Cassivellaunus, avoiding a pitched battle, harasses Caesar's line of march.

1. **ut demonstravimus**,—belongs to the clause *omni... spe. supra*,—referring to the last words of c. 17; *contentionis* is probably suggested by *contenderunt* there. **dimissis**,—App. 5. a. iii. **amplioribus copiis**,—freely, ‘the greater part of,’ etc.; lit.? It is explained by the following abl. absol. clause.

servabat,—trans. this and the other imperfects in §§ 1 and 2 as in App. 26. c. **locis**, etc.—trans. by ‘in.’ **quibus**,—‘where,’ or more lit., ‘through which.’

2. **eum**,—‘whenever.’ **liberius**,—with *ejecerat*; trans. by ‘too’; so *latius* and *longius* below. **viis**,—‘by,’ etc.

periculo equitum,—trans. gen. by ‘to’; App.2.c. (RC.81. d.) **iis**,—i.e. the cavalry. **hoc metu**,—‘through fear of this’; lit.? Cf. *hoc dolore*, c. 4. § 4. **vagari prohibebat**,—cf. on c. 9. § 6.

3. **Relinquebatur ut**, etc.—lit. ‘there was left (or remained) that Caesar should not allow’; freely, ‘the only course left was for Caesar not to allow.’ **discedi pateretur**,—lit. ‘allow that there be departing’; freely, ‘allow his men

to go'; impers. pass.; App. 24; so *noceretur*; for the subj. see RC.II.208.11. HF.182.4. *tantum...noceretur*,—freely, 'to do as much harm'; lit.?

CHAP. 20.

The Trinobantes, one of the strongest of the British tribes, submit to Caesar.

1. *earum regionum*,—i.e. of those united under Cassivellaunus. *ex qua...vitaverat*,—this is parenthetical, and best translated after § 2, which gives the predicate of *Trinobantes*. Break up the parenthesis at *ejus pater*, making thus three sentences in all: 'The Trinobantes send,' etc.; 'From this state,' etc.; 'His father,' etc.

fidem secutus,—freely, 'attaching himself to' or 'embracing the alliance.' *continentem Galliam*,—lit. in apposition; freely 'the mainland of Gaul.' *obtinnerat*,—be careful not to trans. by 'obtain.' *ipse*,—'(while) he himself.'

2. *sese*,—object of the infin., with which supply *se* as subject. *imperata*,—'what he demanded' or 'his bidding.'

3. *Cassivellauni*,—trans. gen. by 'at the hands of' or 'by.' (RC.81.c.) *defendat*,—RC.99.a.2. HF.181.3. *mittat, qui praesit*,—'send (some one) to,' etc. (RC.II.25. HF.181.1.) Mandubracius is of course the one meant.

4. *imperat*,—as in c. 1. § 6. *exercitui*,—trans. by 'for.' *ad numerum*,—'to the (required) number.'

CHAP. 21.

Many other tribes now submit, and Caesar takes the town of Cassivellaunus.

1. *defensis*,—i.e. against Cassivellaunus. *militum*,—see on *Cassivellauni*, c. 20. § 3. *missis*,—App. 5.a.iii.

2. *his*,—masc., the *legati* implied in *legationibus*. *ex eo loco*,—the place where the embassies met him. *munium*,

—partic., with *oppidum*; ‘protected.’ *quo*,—adverb. *satis magnus*,—‘a considerable or very large’; lit. ? *convenerit*,—lit. ‘has come together’; freely, ‘had been gathered.’ For the mood see RC.99.e. HF.206.4.

3. *Oppidum vocant*,—‘call (it) a town.’ The Gauls had regular towns in which they dwelt; the Britons resorted to these strongholds only when danger was threatened. *eum*,—‘whenever or when.’ *silvas impeditas*,—‘a piece of woods difficult of access.’

4. *hunc*,—‘it’; lit. ‘this (place).’ *ex*,—trans. by ‘on.’

5. *morati*,—‘after holding out’; lit. ?

6. *reptus*,—supply *est* from the following *sunt*. *multi*,—‘many (of the enemy),’ as the gender clearly shows in Latin.

CHAP. 22.

A surprise on the camp by the sea is repulsed and Cassivellaunus asks for peace.

1. *ad Cantium*,—with *mittit. quod esse*,—App.34; trans. freely, ‘which as we have shown was by the sea’; lit. ? *supra*,—c. 14. § 1. *quibus regionibus*,—referring to *Cantium*; for dat. see RC.82.e.ii. HF.120.2.

his,—the four *reges*. *coactis*,—trans. by infin. coordinate with trans. of *uti . . . adoriantur*, as in App.5.a.iii. *castra navalia*,—see c. 11. § 5.

2. *interfectis*,—App.5.a.iii. *incolumes*,—acc. with *suos*.

3. *nuntiatio*,—avoid translating all these abl. absol. clauses alike. *acceptis*,—trans. by ‘as’; so *vastatis* and *permotus*. *per*,—‘through the mediation of.’ *de*,—as in IV. c. 27. § 1.

4. *repentinos motus*,—Caesar repeatedly speaks of the fickleness and untrustworthiness of the Gauls. *neque multum*,—‘and as little, or ‘and as not much.’ *id*,—i.e. the *neque multum aestatis*. *in annos singulos*,—lit. ‘for the

years one by one'; freely, 'yearly.' **quid vectigalis**,—App. 2.*d.* (RC.81.*b.i.* HF.69.10.) **penderet**,—'should pay.' For the deliberative subj. see RC.98.*b.* HF.139.*a.* It is here in a dependent clause, and in the imperf. of secondary sequence, with historical pres. (RC.107.*a.iii.*)

5. **interdicit atque imperat**,—the repetition has the effect of 'he emphatically forbids.' **ne noceat**,—App.29.*b.*; 'not to,' etc. (RC.99.*a.2.* HF.181.3.) **neu**,—freely, 'or'; lit.? On its use see RC.II.30. HF.186.6.

CHAP. 23.

Caesar returns to the mainland.

1. **naves**,—see c. 11. §§ 2, 3.

2. **quod**,—giving the reason for *duobus... instituit*, not for *deductis*. **et...et**,—see on IV. c. 21. § 7.

3. **sic accidit**,—'it so happened.' **tanto numero**,—in the previous year he had about 100 (IV. c. 22.); for this year's numbers see c. 2. § 2. **tot navigationibus**,—abl. absol.; App. 5. *a.* X; 'although there were so many trips.' **neque...ulla**,—'no.' **portaret**,—'had on board'; lit.? For the subj. see RC.99.*k.*; so *remitterentur*. § 4. **desideraretur**,—RC.99.*b.* HF.182.4.

4. **ex iis**,—understand *navibus*; 'of those.' **et prioris... et quas**,—'both (those) of. etc....and (those) which,' etc. He divides the ships coming empty from Gaul into two classes, those which had been in Britain and which were now returning for their second load, and those which he had ordered Labienus to have built, c. 11. § 4. Strictly *remitterentur* is inapplicable to the latter class. **commeatus**,—for gen. see RC.81.*e.* HF.130.7. **postea**,—*i.e.* after he had set out for Britain with the fleet built during the winter. **faciendas curaverat**,—cf. on c. 1. § 1. **numero**,—is not dat.; cf. on c. 5. § 3. **sexaginta**,—acc. agreeing with *quas*.

locum,—‘their destination.’ **eaperent, rejicerentur**,—like *desideraretur*, depending on *accidit uti*, § 3.

5. **exspectasset**,—for the form cf. on *imperasset*, IV. c. 22. § 1. **ne...excluderetur**.—RC.99.a. HF.183.2. **quod...suberat**,—explanatory of *ne...excluderetur*; trans. by ‘for.’ *Suberat* is from *subsum*. **necessario**,—adverb with *collocavit*. Trans. freely. ‘he was obliged to,’ etc. Cf. IV. 28. § 3. **angustius**,—supply ‘than was usual.’ (RC.88.b.)

6. **cum**,—as in c. 8. § 6. **inita vigilia**.—lit. ‘the watch having been entered upon *or* begun’; freely, ‘at the beginning of,’ etc.



VOCABULARY

TO

CAESAR, DE BELLO GALLICO,

BOOKS I.-VII.

MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

The quantity of all vowels long by nature has been marked. Vowels not marked are to be considered short by nature.

abl.....	<i>ablative.</i>	n. or neut.	<i>neuter.</i>
acc.....	<i>accusative.</i>	part.....	<i>participle.</i>
adj.....	<i>adjective.</i>	perf.....	<i>perfect.</i>
adv.....	<i>adverb.</i>	plur.....	<i>plural.</i>
conj.....	<i>conjunction.</i>	prep.....	<i>preposition.</i>
dat.....	<i>dative.</i>	pres.....	<i>present.</i>
f. or fem.....	<i>feminine.</i>	pron.....	<i>pronoun.</i>
gen.....	<i>genitive.</i>	sing.....	<i>singular.</i>
indecl.....	<i>indectinable.</i>	subst.....	<i>substantive.</i>
m. or masc.....	<i>masculine.</i>	w.....	<i>with.</i>



VOCABULARY.

A.

A., an abbreviation for **Aulus**.

ā, **ab**, (**abs**), prep. with **abl.**, (**ā** before consonants; **ab** before vowels and consonants; **abs** once before **te**), *away from, from, at a distance of; by; on the side of, at, on, in*.

ab-dō, ere, -**didī**, -**ditum**, *hide, conceal; part. abditus, a, um, as adj., hidden, secluded*.

ab-dūcō, ere, -**dūxī**, -**duetum**, *lead away, carry off*.

ab-eō, ire, -**ii** (-**ivī**), -**itum**, *go away, depart*.

abi-ēs, -**etis**, *f., fir*.

ab-jiciō, ere, -**jēcī**, -**jectum**, *throw away; throw*.

ab-jungō, ere, -**junxī**, -**junctum**, *detach, separate, part*.

ab-ripiō, ere, -**ripui**, -**reptum**, *carry off, snatch*.

abs, see **ā**.

abscidō, ere, -**cidī**, -**cīsum**, *cut off, cut, cut away; cut down*.

absēns, -**entis**, *absent*.

absimilis, *e, unlike*.

ab-sistō, ere, -**stitī**, *withdraw, keep away from*.

abs-tineō, ere, -**tinuī**, -**tentum**, *refrain, abstain, spare*.

abs-trahō, ere, **traxī**, **tractum**, *drag away, carry off*.

absūm, **abesse**, **āfui**, *be absent, be wanting; be far, be distant; take no part in, keep aloof; lack, be lacking*.

abundō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *abound, be strong in*.

āc (shorter form for **atque**, used only before vowels), *and, and further; in comparisons, than, as*.

ac-cēdō, ere, -**cēssi**, -**cēssum**, *approach, draw near, come up; be aided*.

accelerō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *hasten*.

acceptus, *a, um*, from **accipio**.

ac-cidō, ere, -**cidī**, *fall; befall, happen, occur; turn out*.

ac-cidō, ere, -**cidī**, -**cīsum**, *cut into, cut*.

ac-cipio, ere, -**cēpi**, -**ceptum**, *receive, take; suffer, meet with; accept; find; hear; part. acceptus, a, um, as adj., acceptable, popular*.

acclivis, *e, rising, sloping*.

acclivitas, -**tātis**, *f., ascent, slope, steepness*.

Accō, -**ōnis**, *m.*, a chief of the Senones.

accommodō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *fit, adjust; adapt, suit*.

accūrātē, *adv.*, *carefully, elaborately*.

accurrō, ere, -**curri** or -**eueurri**, -**cursum**, *run up, rush up, hasten*.

- accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, accuse,**
find fault, censure.
- ācer, eris, ere, sharp, keen, violent,**
severe.
- acerbē, adv., bitterly, keenly;**
acerbe ferre, be distressed by.
- acerbitās, -tātis, f., bitterness;**
suffering, distress.
- acerbus, a, um, bitter, painful.**
- acervus, ī, m., heap, pile.**
- aciēs, ēī, f., keenness, fierce glance;**
line of battle; battle.
- acquirō, ere, -quīsivī, -quīsī-**
tum, gain, gain advantage.
- ācriter, adv., (āceris, ācerimō),**
fiercely, hotly, desperately.
- āctuarīus, a, um, light, swift.**
- āctus, a, um, from ago.**
- acūtus, a, um, sharp, pointed.**
- ad, prep. with acc., to, towards;**
with a view to, for; according to;
near, by, in, among; (with num-
erals), about.
- adāctus, a, um, from adigo.**
- adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum, equal;**
make equal.
- adamō, āre, āvī, ātum, love**
greatly, become enamored of, take
a fancy to.
- ad-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, add,**
join; make an addition.
- ad-ducō, ere, -duxī, -ductum,**
lead, bring; bring in, conduct;
draw towards, draw taut; induce,
influence, force.
- ademptus, a, um, from adimo.**
- adeō, adv., so, so much.**
- ad-eō, ire, -ī (-ivī), -itum, go**
to, advance; attack; visit; reach,
get at; approach.
- adeptus, a, um, from adipiscor.**
- adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum, ride**
up.
- ad-haerēscō, ere, -haesi,**
-haesum, adhere, cling to, catch
fast to.
- adhibeō, ēre, nī, itum, call in,**
admit; bring along; use, show.
- adhortor, āvī, ātus sum, urge,**
exhort, encourage.
- adhūc, adv., till now, up to the**
present, as yet.
- Adiutumnus, ī, m., a chief of the**
Sontiates.
- ad-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, drive**
up; drive in; hurl, cast; move
up; force, bind.
- ad-imō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum,**
take away, destroy; cut off.
- ad-ipiscor, ī, -eptus sum, ob-**
tain, win.
- aditus, ūs, m., approach, access,**
means of approach; right of
approaching, admittance; inter-
course.
- adjaceō, ēre, uī, be adjacent,**
border upon.
- ad-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum,**
cast; add; throw up.
- adjūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, ad-**
judge.
- ad-jungō, ere, -juxī, -junc-**
tum, join, unite, ally; annex.
- adjutor, ōris, m., assistant, ally.**
- ad-juvō, āre, -jūvī, -jūtum,**
assist, help; aid; be of assistance,
further.
- Admagetobriga, ac, f., a town in**
Gaul, of uncertain position.
- admātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum,**
mature; hasten.
- administer, trī, m., assistant,**
priest.
- administrō, āre, āvī, ātum,**
carry out, execute, attend to;
manage; issue.
- admīror, āri, ātus sum, wonder**
at, admire, be surprised.
- ad-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,**
allow, incur; commit; let go;
part. admissus, at full speed.
- admodum, adv., very, very much,**
exceedingly; with numerals, fully,
quite.
- admoneō, ēre, nī, itum, warn,**
advise.
- adolēscēs, see adulescens.**
- adolēscētia, see adulescentia.**
- adolēscēntulus, see adulescent-**
ulus.

ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvi, -ultum, *grow up.*

ad-orior, īrī, -ortus sum, *attack, assault.*

ad-sciscō, ere, -scivī, -scitum, *join, unite, take.*

adsistō, see *assistō*.

ad-sum, esse, -fui, *be present, be at hand, be near; aid, assist.*

Aduātnea, ae, f., a stronghold in the north-east of Gaul.

Aduātnei, ōrum, m., the *Aduāturi*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

adulēscēns, -entis, m., *young man; the younger.*

adulēscēntia, ae, f., *youth.*

adulēscēntulus, ī, m., *a mere youth.*

adventus, ūs, m., *arrival, approach, coming.*

adversārius, ī, m., *opponent, enemy.*

adversus, a, um, *opposite, facing, in front; ulcers, unsuccessful.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *against.*

ad-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum, *turn towards; w. animū, observe, notice.*

advocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call, summon.*

advolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fly to, rush upon or to.*

aedificiū, ī, n., *building.*

aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum, *build.*

Aedui, ī, m., *an Aeduan; in plur., the Aedui, a tribe in the centre of Gaul.*

aeger, gra, grum, *sick.*

aegrē, adv., (*aegrīus, aeger-rimē*), *scarcely, with difficulty.*

Aemilius, ī, m., *Lucius Aemilius, a cavalry officer with Caesar.*

aequāliter, adv., *uniformly.*

aequinoctium, ī, n., *equinox.*

aequitās, -tātis, f., *fairness, justice; w. animi, contentment.*

aequō, āre, āvī, ātum, *make equal, equalize.*

aequus, a, um, *level; fair, just; even, equal; favorable; contented, calm, resigned.*

aerārius, a, um, *of copper, copper.*

aes, aeris, n., *bronze; copper; money; aes alienum, debt.*

aestās, -tātis, f., *summer.*

aestimātiō, -ōnis, f., *valuation, estimate.*

aestimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *estimate, value, regard.*

aestivus, a, um, *of summer.*

aestuārium, ī, n., *estuary, inlet.*

aestus, ūs, m., *heat; tide.*

aetās, -tātis, f., *age, years.*

aeternus, a, um, *perpetual, unending.*

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *bring; bring forward, announce; cause, bring about, produce.*

af-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *affect, visit, treat; translate freely in act. by cause, produce, inflict; in pass. by suffer, experience, enjoy, be afflicted with, be subjected to, be in.*

af-figō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, *fasten, attach.*

af-fingō, ere, -finxī, -fictum, *invent further, or in addition.*

affinitās, -tātis, f., *relationship, marriage.*

affirmātiō, -ōnis, f., *assurance, assertion.*

affixus, a, um, *from affigo.*

afflictō, āre, āvī, ātum, *buffet, toss about; damage, wreck.*

afflictus, a, um, *from affigo.*

af-fligō, ere, -flixī, -flictum, *shatter, damage, wreck; throw down, bear down.*

affore, *from adsum.*

Afrius, ī, m., *south-west wind.*

Agedinnum, ī, n., *a town in the north central part of Gaul.*

ager, agrī, m., *field, land, country, territory.*

agger, eris, m., *mound; heap of earth; dam, rampart.*

ag-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *attack.*

aggregō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attach, join.*

agitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss.*

agmen, -minis, n., *army on the march, line of march, column; w. primum, the van; w. novissimum, the rear.*

agō, ere, ēgī, ātum, *drive, carry off; bring up, advance; take; drive down; run; do, carry on, work, act; treat, plead, discuss, confer; hold; express.*

agricultūra, ae, f., *agriculture, tilling the land, farming.*

alacer, eris, ere, *eager.*

alacritās, -tātis, f., *eagerness, ardor.*

ālārīi, ōrum, m. plur., *auxiliaries (usually placed on the wings).*

albus, a, um, *white.*

alecs, is, f., *elk.*

Alesia, ae, f., *a town in the central part of Gaul.*

aliās, adv., *at another time; alias... alias, at one time... at another, now... now.*

aliēnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *alienate, estrange; deprive of reason, frenzy, distract.*

aliēnus, a, um, *of another, of others, another's; unfavorable; strange, foreign; out of place.*

aliō, adv., *elsewhere.*

aliquandīn, adv., *for some time.*

aliquandō, adv., *at some time; at last, at length.*

aliquantō, adv., *somewhat.*

aliquantus, a, um, *some; neut. as subst., some portion, a considerable part.*

aliquī, qua, quod, *some, any.*

aliquis, quid, *someone, something.*

aliquot, indeclinable, *several, some.*

aliter, adv., *otherwise, in a different manner, else.*

alius, a, ul, other, another; different; alius... alius, one... another; alii... alii, some... others.

allātus, a, um, *from affero.*

al-liciō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *entice, allure, attract.*

Allobroges, um, m., *the Allobroges, a tribe in the northern part of the Province.*

alō, ere, aluī, altum, *nourish, support, feed; maintain, keep; strengthen, increase, foster.*

Alpēs, ium, f. plur., *the Alps.*

alter, era, erum, *the other; the second; another; alter... alter, the one... the other.*

alternus, a, um, *alternate.*

altitūd-ō, -inis, f., *height; depth; thickness.*

altus, a, um, *high, lofty; deep; neut. as subst., altum, ī, n., the deep, deep water, the sea.*

alūta, ae, f., *leather.*

ambactus, ī, m., *vassal, retainer.*

Ambarri, ōrum, m., *the Ambarri, a tribe north of the Province, on the Rhone.*

Ambiānī, ōrum, m., *the Ambiani, a tribe in the north of Gaul, on the Channel.*

Ambibariī, ōrum, m., *the Ambibariī, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*

Ambiliātī, ōrum, m., *the Ambiliāti, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*

Ambiorix, igis, m., *a chief of the Eburones.*

Ambivarētī, ōrum, m., *the Ambivarētī, a tribe in the centre of Gaul.*

Ambivaritī, ōrum, m., *the Ambivaritī, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*

ambō, ae, ō, *in plur. only, both.*

āmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.*

āmentum, ī, n., *thong (for throwing a javelin).*

amfractus, *see anfractus.*

amicitia, ae, f., *friendship, alliance.*

amicus, a, um, *friendly, devoted.*

amicus, ī, m., *friend; ally.*

- â-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** *lose; let slip.*
- amor, ōris, m.** *love, affection.*
- amplē, adv.,** *largely, generously;*
compar. amplius, more, further,
besides.
- amplificō, āre, āvī, ātum.** *increase, heighten.*
- amplitū-dō, -dinis, f.** *size, extent; greatness.*
- amplus, a, um,** *large, great; magnificent, noble, high.*
- an, conj., or.**
- Anartēs, ium, m.,** *the Anartes, a tribe in Dacia, north of the Danube.*
- Ancalites, um, m.,** *the Ancalites, a tribe in Britain.*
- an-ceps, -cipitis,** *double, twofold.*
- ancora, ae, f.,** *anchor.*
- Andecumborius, ī, m.,** *one of the Remi.*
- Andēs, ium, m.,** *the Andes, a tribe near the mouth of the Loire.*
- ânfractus, ūs, m.,** *bend, circuit, winding.*
- angulus, ī, m.,** *corner, angle.*
- angustē, adv.,** *closely; sparingly.*
- angustiae, ārum, f. plur.,** *narrow pass, defile; strait, trouble, difficulty.*
- angustus, a, um,** *narrow, small, contracted; steep; neut. as subst., critical position.*
- anima, ae, f.,** *soul.*
- animadver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum,** *notice, observe; attend to, punish.*
- anim-al, -ālis, n.,** *animal, living being.*
- animus, ī, m.,** *soul, mind, heart, spirit, will; feelings; courage; character, disposition; consciousness; pride, ambition; pleasure, amusement.*
- annōtinus, a, um,** *of the year before.*
- annus, ī, m.,** *year.*
- annuus, a, um,** *yearly, for a year.*
- ânser, eris, m.,** *goose.*
- ante, prep. w. acc.,** *before; adv., before, formerly, previously; above.*
- anteā, adv.,** *before, formerly, previously; hitherto.*
- ante-eēdō, ere, -eēssi, -eēssum,** *go before, go in advance, precede; outstrip, anticipate; surpass, excel.*
- antecursor, ōris, m.,** *scout, vanguard, advance guard.*
- ante-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** *prefer, consider superior.*
- antenna, ae, f.,** *sail-yard.*
- ante-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum,** *place before, regard of more importance than.*
- antever-tō, ere, -tī, -sum,** *prefer.*
- antiquitus, adv.,** *from early times, in olden times, of old, long ago.*
- antiquus, a, um,** *ancient, old, remote.*
- Antistius, ī, m.,** *Caius Antistias Reginus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- Antōnius, ī, m.,** *Marcus Antonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- Ap.,** *a contraction for Appius.*
- aper-iō, ĩre, uī, -tum,** *open; perf. part. pass. apertus as adj., open, unprotected, uncovered, exposed; clear; unchecked.*
- apertē, adv.,** *openly.*
- Apoll-ō, -inīs, m.,** *Apollo, a Roman god.*
- apparō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *prepare, make ready.*
- appellō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *call, name; address, call upon, accost.*
- ap-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum,** *bring in to shore, land, bring to land.*
- ap-petō, ere, -petivī, -petitum,** *seek, aim at; approach.*
- Appius, ī, m.,** *a Roman praenomen.*
- applicō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *apply; with reflexive, lean against.*
- apportō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *bring.*

approbō, āre, āvī, ātum, ap-
prove of, commend.

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum,
approach, draw near.

appulsus, a, um, from appello,
ere.

Aprilis, e, adj., of April.

aptus, a, um, suited, suitable, apt.

apud, prep. w. acc., at, with, among,
near, in the presence of; in one's
opinion.

aqua, ae, f., water.

aquatiō, -ōnis, f., getting water.

aquila, ae, f., eagle, the ensign of
a Roman legion.

Aquilēia, ae, f., a Roman colony
at the head of the Adriatic.

aquilifer, eri, m., eagle-bearer,
standard-bearer.

Aquitāna, ae, f., Aquitania, the
southwestern part of Gaul, be-
tween the Garonne and the Pyre-
nees.

Aquitānus, ī, m., an Aquitanian;
in plur., the Aquitani, a people
akin to the Spaniards rather than
to the Gauls, dwelling in the
southwestern part of Gaul.

Ar-ar, -aris, m., the Arar, a river
flowing south into the Rhone.

arbitr, tri, m., arbitrator.

arbitrium, ī, n., pleasure, will,
judgment.

arbitror, āri, ātus sum, think,
consider, judge.

arbor, oris, f., tree.

arcess-ō, ere, -īvī, -itum, sum-
mon, send for; invite, call in.

ardeō, ēre, arsi, arsum, burn,
be on fire, be inflamed.

Arduenna, ae, f., a forest in the
north-east of Gaul.

arduus, a, um, difficult; steep.

Arecomici, ōrum, m. plur., the
Arecomici, a tribe in the Province
near the Pyrenees.

Arēmoriceus, a, um, Armorican;
Arēmorica was a collective name
given to many tribes in the north-
west of Gaul.

argentum, ī, n., silver.

argilla, ae, f., clay.

āridus, a, um, dry; neut. as
subst., dry land.

ari-ēs, -etis, m., ram, battering-
ram; battress.

Ariovistus, ī, m., a chief of the
Germans.

Aristius, ī, m., Marcus Aristius, a
military tribune with Caesar.

arma, ōrum, n. plur., arms; tack-
ling.

armāmenta, ōrum, n. plur., tack-
ling, rigging.

armātūra, ae, f., armor, equip-
ment.

armō, āre, āvī, ātum, arm,
equip; perf. part. in plur. as subst.,
armed men.

Armoricus, a, um, see Are-
moriceus.

Arpinēus, ī, m., Caius Arpinēus,
a Roman knight with Caesar.

ar-ripiō, ere, -ripi, -reptum,
seize, lay hold of, secure.

arroganter, adv., with presump-
tion, insolently.

arrogantia, ae, f., presumption,
arrogance, insolence.

ars, artis, f., art.

artē, adv., closely, tightly, com-
pactly.

articulus, ī, m., joint.

artificium, ī, n., handicraft; ac-
complishment, skill; artifice,
craft.

artus, a, um, dense, thick.

Arvernus, ī, m., an Arvernian; in
plur., the Arverni, a tribe south of
the centre of Gaul.

arx, arcis, f., citadel, stronghold.

a-scendō, ere, -scendi, -scen-
sum, climb, ascend, mount.

ascēsus, ūs, m., ascent, ascend-
ing; means of ascent.

aspectus, ūs, m., appearance,
sight.

asper, era, erum, severe, fierce,
violent.

assiduus, a, um, constant, continued, incessant.

assistō, ere, astitī, stand near, appear.

assuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, accustom, train.

assuē-scō, ere, -vī, -tum, become accustomed.

at, conj., but; yet, at least.

atque, conj., and, and further; in comparisons, than, as.

Atre-bas, -batis, m., an Atrebatian; in plur., the Atrebrates, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul, near the straits of Dover.

Atrius, ī, m., Quintus Atrius, an officer of Caesar's.

at-texō, ere, -texuī, -textum, weave on, weave.

at-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tāctum, touch, border on; reach.

attrib-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, assign, give.

attulī, from affero.

auctor, ōris, m., adviser, approver, advocate, instigator.

auctōri-tās, -tātis, f., influence, weight, prestige; power.

auctus, a, um, part. of augeo, increased, advanced, strengthened.

audācia, ae, f., boldness.

audācter, adv., boldly, confidently, fearlessly.

andeō, ēre, ausus sum, dare, venture, attempt.

audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, hear, listen to, hear of; pres. part., audiēns, -entis, obedient.

auditiō, -ōnis, f., hearsay, rumor.

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, increase, strengthen, promote.

Aulerci, ōrum, m. plur., the Aulerci, a race in the north-west of Gaul, divided into four tribes, the Eburovices, Brannovices, Diablintes and Cenomani.

Aulus, ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

aureus, a, um, of gold, golden.

auriga, ae, m., charioteer.

auris, is, f., ear.

Aurunculēns, ī, m., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Auscī, ōrum, m. plur., the Ausci, a tribe near the Pyrenees.

ausus, a, um, from audeo.

aut, conj., or, or else; repeated, either....or.

autem, conj., but, whereas, while; moreover, now.

autumnus, ī, m., autumn.

auxī, from augeo.

auxiliāris, e, auxiliary; plur. as subst., the auxiliaries.

auxilior, āri, ātus sum, give aid, help, assist.

auxilium, ī, n., aid, help, assistance; resource, support; in plur., auxiliaries, reinforcements.

Avaricēnsis, e, of Avaricum.

Avaricum, ī, n., a town in central Gaul, near the Loire.

avāritia, ae, f., greed, covetousness.

ā-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry off.

āver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn away, turn or put aside; alienate.

avis, is, f., bird.

avus, ī, m., grandfather.

Axona, ae, f., a river in the north of Gaul, joining the Seine.

B.

Bacēnis, is, f., a forest in Germany.

Baculus, ī, m., Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Baleāris, is, m., Balearic, from the Balearic islands.

baltens, ī, m., belt, sword-belt.

Balventius, ī, m., Titus Balventius, a centurion in Caesar's army.

barbarus, a, um, foreign, uncivilized, rude, barbarian; m. as subst., barbarus, ī, m., a barbarian.

Basilus, ī, m., Lucius Minucius Basilus, an officer with Caesar.

Batavi, ōrum, m. plur., *the Batavians, a tribe at the mouth of the Rhine.*

Belgae, ārum, m. plur., *the Belgians, a people occupying the north-east of Gaul, and largely of German origin.*

Belgium, ī, n., *Belgium, the country of the Belgae.*

bellicōsus, a, um, warlike.

bellicus, a, um, of war, in war.

bellō, āre, āvi, ātum, make war, fight.

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Bellovacī, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul.*

bellum, ī, n., war.

bene, adv., (melius, optimē), well, successfully.

beneficium, ī, n., kindness, service, favor.

benevolentia, ae, f., good will; kindness.

Bibracte, is, n., *the chief town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.*

Bibrax, -actis, f., *a town of the Remi, in the northern part of Gaul.*

Bibrocī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Bibrocī, a tribe of Britain.*

biduum, ī, n., two days, space of two days.

biennium, ī, n., two years.

Bigerriōnes, um, m. plur., *the Bigerriones, a tribe near the Pyrenees.*

binī, ae, a, two each, two by two, two.

bipartitō, adv., in two divisions.

bipedālis, e, two feet (thick).

bipertitō, see bipartitō.

bis, adv., twice.

Bituriges, um, m. plur., *the Bituriges, a tribe in the centre of Gaul, on the Loire.*

Bođuōgnātus, ī, m., *a leader of the Nervii.*

Boii, ōrum, m. plur., *the Boii, the Boians, a nation originally living in Germany on the Danube.*

bonitās, -tātis, f., goodness, excellence, fertility.

bonus, a, um (melior, optimus), good; n. as subst., bonum, ī, advantage; in plur., goods, property

bōs, bovis, m., ox.

bracchium, ī, n., arm.

Brannovices, um, m. plur., *the Brannovices, a branch of the Aulerci, in the north-west of Gaul.*

Brannovii, ōrum, m. plur., *the Brannovii, a tribe in Gaul.*

Bratuspantium, ī, n., *a town of the Bellovacī, in the north of Gaul.*

brevis, e, short; as adv., brevī, in a short time.

brevitās, -tātis, f., shortness; short, stature.

breviter, adv., briefly.

Britanni, ōrum, m. plur., *the Britons.*

Britannia, ae, f., Britain.

Britanniens, a, um, of Britain, of or with the Britons.

brūma, ae, f., the winter solstice.

Brūtus, ī, m., Decimus Brutus, a lieutenant with Caesar.

C.

C., *an abbreviation of Galus (or Caius).*

Cabillōnum, ī, n., *a town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.*

Cabūrus, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Caburus, a Romanized Gaul.*

caecūmen, -minis, n., top, point.

caulāver, -eris, n., dead body, corpse.

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, fall, be slain.

Cadureus, ī, m., one of the Cadurci; in plur., the Cadurci, a tribe in Aquitania.

caedes, is, m., slaughter, massacre, murder.

caedō, ere, cecidī, caesum, cut down, fell.

caelestis, e, heavenly; m. plur. as subst., the gods.

caerimōnia, *ae, f., ceremony, sacred rite.*

Caeroesi, ōrum, *m. plur., the Caeroesi, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*

caeruleus, a, um, *blue, dark blue.*

Caesar, aris, *m., Caius Julius Caesar, a Roman general; also Lucius Caesar, a lieutenant with Caesar.*

Caius, ī, m., *see Gains.*

calamitās, -tātis, *f., disaster, defeat, loss.*

Calendae, ārum, *f. plur., the Calends, the first day of each month.*

Caletēs, um, and **Caletī, ōrum**, *m. plur., the Caletes or Caleti, a tribe at the mouth of the Seine.*

callidus, a, um, *shrewd, cunning.*

cālō, ōnis, *m., soldier's servant, camp-follower.*

campester, tris, *tre, of or on the plain; level.*

campus, ī, m., *field, plain.*

Camulogēnus, ī, m., *a chief of the Aulerci.*

Canīnius, ī, m., *Caius Caninius Rebilus, a lieutenant of Caesar.*

canō, ere, cecinī, cantum, *sing. sound.*

Cantabrī, ōrum, *m. plur., the Cantabrians, a tribe in the north of Spain.*

Cantium, ī, n., *Kent, in the south-east of England.*

caper, prī, m., *goat.*

capillus, ī, m., *hair.*

capīō, ere, cepī, captum, *take, catch, seize; get, occupy, reach; captivate, overcome; take up, choose, adopt.*

capra, ae, f., *she-goat.*

captīvus, ī, m., *captive, prisoner.*

capus, ūs, m., *capucity, nature.*

cap-ut, -itis, *n., head; person; life; mouth (of a river).*

careō, ēre, nī, be without, go without.

carīna, ae, f., *keel.*

Carnūtēs, um, *m. plur., the Carnutes, a tribe in central Gaul on the Loire.*

carō, carnis, *f., flesh, meat.*

car-pō, ere, -psī, -ptum, *criticise, blame.*

cartus, ī, m., *cart, wagon.*

cārus, a, um, *dear, valuable.*

Carvilius, ī, m., *a king ruling in Kent.*

casa, ae, f., *hut.*

cāseus, ī, m., *cheese.*

Cassi, ōrum, *m. plur., the Cassi, a tribe in Britain.*

Cassianus, a, um, *of or with Cassius.*

cassis, -idis, *m., helmet.*

Cassius, ī, m., *Lucius Cassius, a Roman general, consul in B.C. 107.*

Cassivellannus, ī, m., *a British chief.*

castellum, ī, n., *fort, stronghold.*

Castiens, ī, m., *a chief of the Sequani.*

castra, ōrum, *n. plur., camp, encampment.*

cāsus, ūs, m., *happening, occurrence; accident, chance; fate, disaster; emergency.*

Catamantaloedes, is, m., *a chief of the Sequani.*

catēna, ae, f., *chain.*

Caturiges, um, *m. plur., the Caturiges, a tribe in the Province, near the Alps.*

Catuvoleus, ī, m., *a chief of the Eburones.*

causa, ae, f., *cause, reason; case; pretext, excuse; condition; in abl. sing., for the sake of, for the purpose of.*

cautē, adv., *cautiously, with caution.*

cautēs, is, m., *sharp rock, reef.*

Cavarillus, ī, m., *a chief of the Aedui.*

Cavarinus, ī, m., *king of the Senones.*

caveō, ēre, cavī, cautum, *be on one's guard; give security.*

- cēdō, ere, cēssī, cēssum, retreat,**
give way, retire; yield; with-
draw.
- celer, eris, ere, swift, speedy,**
sudden.
- celeritās, -tātis, f., swiftiness,**
speed, rapidity.
- celeriter, adv., (celerius, celer-
rimē), swiftly, quickly, rapidly.**
- cēlō, āre, āvi, ātum, conceal,**
hide.
- Celtae, ārum, m. plur., the Celts,**
or Gauls, one of the three great
nations inhabiting Gaul.
- Celtillus, ī, m., a chief of the**
Arverni.
- Cēnabēnsis, is, m., a man of**
Cenabum; in plur., the people of
Cenabum.
- Cēnabum, ī, n., a town of central**
Gaul, on the Loire.
- Cenimāgū, ōrum, m. plur., the**
Cenimagni, a tribe of Britain.
- Cenouānī, ōrum, m. plur., the**
Cenomani, a tribe in the north
west of Gaul.
- cēns-cō, ēre, -nī, -um, be of opin-**
ion, think; hold, decree; advise.
- cēnsus, ūs, m., census, enumera-**
tion.
- centum, a hundred.**
- centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion (an**
officer in the Roman army).
- cēpi, from capio.**
- cernō, ere, crēvi, crētum, per-**
ceive, see, make out.
- certāmen, -minis, n., contest;**
engagement.
- certō, adv., certainly, with cer-**
tainty; at least.
- certus, a, um, certain, fixed, speci-**
fied, sure, definite; trustworthy;
certiorem facere, to inform.
- cervus, ī, m., stag; fork-shaped**
branch.
- cēs-pes, -pitis, m., sod, turf.**
- cēteri, ae, a, the others, the rest.**
- Centrones, um, m. plur., the**
Centrones, 1. a tribe in the Alps;
2. a tribe of the Belgae.
- Cevenna, ae, f., the Cevennes, a**
mountain range in the south-east
of Gaul, west of the Rhone.
- Chēruscī, ōrum, m. plur., the**
Cherusci, a German tribe.
- cibārius, a, um, of food; n. plur.**
as subst., food, provisions.
- cibus, ī, m. food.**
- Cicerō, ōnis, m., Quintus Tullius**
Cicero, one of Caesar's lieutenants,
and a brother of the orator.
- Cimberius, ī, m., a chief of the**
Suebi.
- Cimbri, ōrum, m. plur., the**
Cimbri, a German tribe that in-
vaded Gaul about 110 B.C.
- Cingetorix, -igis, m., 1. a chief of**
the Treviri; 2. a king of Kent.
- cin-gō, ere, -xi, -ctum, sur-**
round, encircle; man.
- cippus, ī, m., post, stake, palisade.**
- circinus, ī, m., pair of compasses.**
- circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc.,**
about.
- circuitus, a, um, perf. part. of**
circumeo.
- circunitus, ūs, m., circumference,**
circuit; detour, circuitous route.
- circum, prep. w. acc., around,**
about, near.
- circum-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum,**
cut around, cut; perf. part. pass.,
isolated, steep.
- circumclū-dō, ere, -sī, -sum,**
encircle, line, put a rim around.
- circum-dō, -dare, -dedī,**
-datum, put around; surround,
encircle.
- circum-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -duc-**
tum, lead around; draw around.
- circum-cō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum**
or **circuitum**, go around, sur-
round; make the rounds of, visit.
- circum-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fū-**
sum, pour around, hence, in
pass., rush in from all sides, crowd
around; surround.
- circum-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jee-**
tum, place around.
- circum-mittō, ere, -misi, -mis-**
sum, send around.

circummūniō, īre, īvī, itum,
fortify all round, protect.

circum-plector, ī, -plexus sum,
surround; embrace, include.

circum-sistō, ere, -stetī, sur-
round, hem in, crowd around;
rally around.

circum-spiciō, ere, -spexī,
-spectum, *look about for, look*
carefully at; consider, examine
carefully.

circum-stō, -stāre, -stetī, sur-
round.

circumvallō, āre, āvī, ātum,
surround with walls, invest, block-
ade.

circum-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vec-
tum, *carry around; in pass.,*
ride around.

circum-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ven-
tum, *surround, get round, out-*
flank; outwit, betray, deceive, de-
fraud.

eis, prep. w. acc., on this side of.

Cisalpinus, a, um, Cisalpine, *on*
this (i.e. the Italian) side of the
Alps.

Cisrhenānus, a, um, on this (i.e.
the western) side of the Rhine.

Cita, ae, m., Cuius Fufius Cita, a
Roman knight.

citerior, ius, (comparative) hither,
nearer.

citō, adv., (citius, citissimē),
quickly.

citō, āre, āvī, ātum, hasten;
perf. part., citātus, as adj., swift.

eitrā, prep. w. acc., on this side of.

eitrō, adv., hither.

cīvis, is, m., citizen.

cīvītās, -tātis, f., state; citizen-
ship.

clam, adv., secretly.

clāmitō, āre, āvī, ātum, cry out,
keep shouting.

clāmor, -ōris, m., shout, shouting,
cry.

clandestīnus, a, um, secret.

clārus, a, um, loud, distinct.

clāssis, is, f., fleet.

Claudius, ī, m., Appius Claudius,
consul in 54 B.C.

claudō, ere, clausī, clausum,
close; w. agmen, bring up the
rear.

clāvus, ī, m., nail.

clēmentia, ae, f., mercifulness,
moderation, forbearance.

eliēns, -entis, m., dependant, re-
tainer, vassal.

clientēla, ae, f., dependency, vas-
salage; protection; in plur., de-
pendants.

clivus, ī, m., slope, ascent.

Clōdus, ī, m., Publius Clodius, a
bitter partisan of Caesar.

Cn., an abbreviation for Gnaeus.

coacervō, āre, āvī, ātum, heap
up, crowd together.

coāctus, a, um, from eogo.

coāctus, ūs, m., compulsion.

coagmentō, āre, āvī, ātum,
fasten together.

Cocosātes, um, m. plur., the Co-
cosates, a tribe of Aquitania.

coēgī, from eogo.

co-emō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum,
buy up.

co-eō, -īre, -īī -īvī, -itum,
unite, join.

coepī, isse, coeptus sum, began,
have begun.

coerceō, ēre, uī, itum, restrain,
check.

cōgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, consider,
think, reflect, have thoughts; take
thought, plan.

cōgnātiō, -ōnis, f., kinship; kins-
men, clan, family connections.

cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gni-
tum, perceive, learn, find out, as-
certain, become acquainted with;
inquire into; in perf. tenses, know,
be aware.

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum, col-
lect, gather, get together; compel,
force, be urgent.

co-hors, -hortis, f., a cohort, one
tenth of a legion.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, f., *encouraging, address.*

cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, *encourage, address, urge.*

coire, from *coco*.

collātus, a, um, from *confero*.

collandō, āre, āvi, ātum, *praise, extol, highly commend.*

colligō, āre, āvi, ātum, *fasten, pin together.*

col-ligō, ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *gather, collect; acquire: with se, collect one's self, recover, rally.*

collis, is, m., *hill.*

collocō, āre, āvi, ātum, *place, station; arrange, stow; settle; give in marriage.*

colloquium, i, n., *conversation, interview, conference.*

col-loquor, ī, -locūtus sum, *converse, confer, have an interview.*

colō, ere, colui, cultum, *till, cultivate; worship.*

colōnia, ae, f., *colony, settlement.*

color, ōris, m., *color.*

com-būrō, ere, -būssi, -būstum, *burn up.*

com-es, -itis, m., *companion, attendant.*

comitia, -ōrum, n. plur., *comitia, election.*

comitor, ārī, ātus sum, *accompany.*

commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies, provisions; passage, trip.*

commemorō, āre, āvi, ātum, *mention, speak of, relate.*

commendō, āre, āvi, ātum, *commend.*

commeō, āre, āvi, ātum, *visit, resort, go to and fro.*

comminus, adv., *hand to hand, in close combat.*

commissūra, ae, f., *junction, joining.*

com-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, *join; w. proclium, begin; entrust, put trust in; allow, commit, do; leave it possible, allow to come about.*

Commilus, ī, m., *a king of the Atrebrates.*

commodē, adv., *easily, to advantage, effectively, conveniently.*

commodus, a, um, *fitting, suitable, advantageous, favorable; neut. as subst., commodum, i, advantage, interest, convenience, blessing.*

commone-faciō, ere, -feci, -factum, *remind.*

commoror, ārī, ātus sum, *stay, delay, linger.*

com-moveō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *move; alarm, disturb; influence, impress.*

commūnicō, āre, āvi, ātum, *communicate, share, consult, impart; join, add.*

commūniō, ire, ivi, itum, *strongly fortify, secure; build.*

commūnis, e, *common, general, joint, concerted.*

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., *change; turn.*

commūtō, āre, āvi, ātum, *change, exchange.*

comparō, āre, āvi, ātum, *compare; prepare, provide, procure, raise, get.*

com-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, *drive, drive in, gather.*

compendium, ī, n., *gain, profit.*

com-perlō, ire, -peri, -pertum, *learn, find out, discover; perf. part. as adj., certain.*

com-plector, ī, -plexus sum, *embrace; include, enclose.*

compl-eō, ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *fill, fill up; man.*

complūrēs, a, *several, many, a great many.*

comportō, āre, āvi, ātum, *bring in, collect.*

compre-hendō, ere, -hendi, -hensum, *seize, grasp, catch, capture; take.*

comprobō, āre, āvi, ātum, *approve, justify, confirm.*

compulsus, a, um, from *compello*.

cōnātum, ī, n., *attempt, undertaking.*

cōnātus, ūs, m., *attempt.*

con-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum. *grant, allow, permit; yield, give in.*

concertō, āre, āvī, ātum. *contend, fight.*

con-cēssus, ūs, m., *permission.*

con-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cīsum. *fall, fall down.*

con-cīlō, ere, -cīlī, -cīsum. *cut down, slay; perf. part. as adj., cut up, broken.*

conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum. *win over; gain, obtain.*

conciliū, ī, n., *meeting, assembly, council.*

con-cīsus, a, um, from *con-cidō.*

con-citō, āre, āvī, ātum. *arouse, stir up, call out.*

conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum. *cry out, call out, shout.*

con-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum. *shut up, enclose.*

Conconnetodumnus, ī, m., a leader of the Carnutes.

concrep-ō, āre, -uī, -itum. *clash, make a clashing noise.*

con-currō, ere, -currī (-en-cur-ri), -cursum. *run together, rally, rush up, hasten, flock.*

coneursō, āre, āvī, ātum. *run to and fro.*

concursum, ūs, m., *running together, rally, crowd; rush, onset, charge; collision.*

condemnō, āre, āvī, ātum. *declare guilty.*

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *terms, agreement, condition; state.*

condōnō, āre, āvī, ātum. *give up, forgive for the sake of.*

Condrūsī, ōrum, m. plur., the Condrusi, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

con-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum. *gather, assemble; hire.*

cōn-ferciō, īre, -fersī, -fertum. *pick closely; perf. part. confer-tus, a, um, crowded, in close array, in close order.*

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, col-lātum. *gather, collect, bring in, convey; with se, betake one's self; compare; put off, postpone; lay the blame on, ascribe.*

cōnfectus, a, um, from *con-ferciō.*

confestim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum. *finish, carry out, complete, accomplish; make out, work up; exhaust, wear out.*

cōn-fido, ere, -fisis sum. *trust, rely on, have confidence.*

cōn-figō, ere, -fixī, -fixum. *fasten.*

cōnfinis, e, adj., *adjacent, neighboring.*

cōnfinium, ī, n., *neighborhood, borders.*

cōn-ficiō, -fierī, irregular pass. of *conficio.*

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, f., *assurance, assertion.*

cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum. *strengthen; establish, fix; declare, give pledge; encourage, reassure, confirm, rouse.*

cōn-fisus, a, um, from *confido.*

cōn-fiteor, ēvī, -fessus sum. *confess, acknowledge.*

cōnfixus, a, um, from *configo.*

cōnflagrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *be on fire, be in flames.*

cōnflētō, āre, āvī, ātum. *harass.*

cōnfligō, ere, -flīxī, -flīctum. *contend, engage, fight.*

cōnfluēs, entis, m., *confluence, juncture.*

cōn-fluō, ere, -fluxī, -fluxum. *gather, flock.*

cōn-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fūsum. *gather together.*

con-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *meet; engage, contend, fight.*

congressus, ūs, m., engagement, conflict.

conjectūra, ae, f., conjecture, guess.

con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, hurl, cast, throw; drive; put, place; w. *se*, rush.

conjunctim, adv., jointly, together.

con-jungō, ere, -juxī, -junctum, join, connect, unite.

con-junx, -jugis, m. and f., husband; wife.

conjūratiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy, combination, league.

conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, take a (joint) oath, conspire, combine.

cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, try, attempt, undertake, make an attempt.

conquī-ēscō, ere, -ēvī, -ētum, rest.

con-quīrō, ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum, search for, hunt up, collect.

cōsanguīneus, ī, m., kinsman.

cōn-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, ascend, mount; embark on, go on board.

cōnscientia, ae, f., consciousness.

cōn-sciscō, ere, -scivī, -scitum, resolve on; w. *sibi mortem*, commit suicide.

cōnscīus, a, um, conscious.

cōn-serībō, ere, -serīpsī, -serīptum, write; enlist, enroll, levy.

cōnsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, consecrate.

consector, ārī, ātus sum, follow up, pursue.

cōnsecūtus, a, um, from *consequor*.

cōnsēdī, from *consido*.

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, f., unanimity.

cōnsēnsus, ūs, m., agreement, consent.

cōn-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, agree, combine, conspire.

cōn-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, follow, overtake; attain, obtain, secure; succeed.

cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum, preserve, save, spare, protect; observe, maintain.

Considius, ī, m., Publius Considius, one of Caesar's soldiers.

cōn-sidō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, encamp, take up a position; settle; hold a session.

cōnsilium, ī, n., deliberation, consultation; plan, design, resolve, purpose; prudence, discretion; counsel, advice; council.

cōnsimilis, e, very similar, like.

cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stātum, take up position, stand, get a footing; halt, stop, make a stand; ground; settle; consist of, depend on.

cōnsobrīnus, ī, m., cousin.

cōnsōlor, ārī, ātus sum, console.

cōnspectus, ūs, m., sight, view, presence.

cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, catch sight of, observe, see.

cōnspicor, ārī, ātus sum, catch sight of, observe, see.

cōnspīrō, āre, āvī, ātum, combine, conspire.

cōnstanter, adv., uniformly; firmly, steadily.

cōnstantia, ae, f., firmness, steadfastness, constancy.

cōnsternō, āre, āvī, ātum, dismay, impress.

cōn-sternō, ere, -strāvī, -strātum, cover, floor.

cōnstipō, āre, āvī, ātum, crowd, press.

cōnstitī, from *consisto*.

cōnstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, establish, arrange, appoint, fix; decide, resolve, determine; place, station, draw up.

cōn-stō, āre, -stitī, -stātum, cost; depend on; remain, be unchanged; impersonal use, it is certain; agreed, established, evident.

- cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum,** *become accustomed; in perf. tenses, be accustomed.*
- cōnsuētū-dō, -dinis, f.,** *custom, habit.*
- cōn-sul, -sulis, m.,** *consul, the chief magistrate of Rome, of whom there were two, elected for a year.*
- cōnsulātus, ūs, m.,** *consulship.*
- cōnsul-ō, ere, -nī, -tum,** *consult, discuss, deliberate: provide for, take thought for, have regard for.*
- cōnsultō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *deliberate, take counsel.*
- cōnsultō, adv.,** *designedly, on purpose.*
- cōnsultum, ī, n.,** *decree.*
- cōn-sūmō, ere, -sumpsī, -sumptum,** *spend; consume, exhaust.*
- cōn-surgō, ere, -surrēxī, -surrectum,** *rise up.*
- contabulō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *build up (by stories!).*
- contāgiō, -ōnis, f.,** *contact, contagion.*
- contāminō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *contaminate, stain.*
- con-tegō, ere, -texī, -tectum,** *cover up.*
- con-temnō, ere, -tempsī, temptum,** *despise.*
- contemptiō, -ōnis, f.,** *contempt.*
- contemptus, ūs, m.,** *scorn; object of contempt.*
- conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum,** *hasten, make one's way, push on; strive, exert one's self; struggle, fight, contend; maintain, insist.*
- contentiō, -ōnis, f.,** *struggle, contest.*
- contentus, a, um,** *content, satisfied.*
- contestor, ārī, ātus sum,** *call upon, invoke.*
- contex-ō, ere, -uī, -tum,** *weave, join, construct.*
- contigī, from contingo.**
- continēns, entis, f.,** *the continent, mainland.*
- continenter, adv.,** *continually, uninterruptedly, without stopping.*
- continentia, ae, f.,** *self-control, self-restraint.*
- con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** *hold together; contain, hem in, restrain, keep, hold; bound, surround, occupy; pres. part. as adj., continēns, -entis, continual, incessant, uninterrupted, unbroken, continuous.*
- con-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tactum,** *touch, reach, extend to; happen, fall to the lot of.*
- continuātiō, -ōnis, f.,** *continuance, succession.*
- continuō, adv.,** *at once, immediately.*
- continuus, a, um,** *successive, unbroken, continuous.*
- contio, -ōnis, f.,** *assembly, meeting.*
- contionor, ārī, ātus sum,** *address.*
- contrā, 1. adv.,** *against; otherwise; contra atque, contrary to what; 2. prep. w. acc., opposite, over against; against.*
- con-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum,** *make smaller, reduce; collect, gather together.*
- contrārius, a, um,** *opposite; ex contrario, on the contrary.*
- contrōversia, ae, f.,** *quarrel, dispute, feud.*
- contumēlia, ae, f.,** *disgrace, insult, affront; buffetting, violence.*
- conval-escō, ere, -uī, recover,** *regain health.*
- convallis, is, f.,** *(enclosed) valley.*
- con-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum,** *gather, bring in.*
- con-veniō, ire, -vēmī, -ventum,** *come together, meet, assemble, gather; come, arrive; be agreed upon; be fitting.*
- conventus, ūs, m.,** *meeting, assembly; assizes.*
- conver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum,** *turn, turn about; change, alter; w. signa, wheel about.*

Convictolitāvis, is, m., an Aeduan of high rank.

con-vincō, ere, -vīcī, -vietum, *prove, bring home.*

convocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call together, call, summon.*

co-rior, īrī, -ortus sum, *arise, spring up, break out.*

cōpia, ae, f., *supply, abundance, quantity; resources, wealth; in plur., forces, troops.*

cōpiōsus, a, um, *well-supplied, rich.*

cōpula, ae, f., *grappling hook.*

cor, cordis, n., *heart; cordi esse, be dear, be cherished.*

cōram, adv., *in person, face to face.*

corium, ī, n., *skin, hide.*

cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing (of an army).*

corōna, ae, f., *garland; circle; sub corona, at auction.*

corp-us, -oris, n., *body, person; dead body, corpse; system.*

cor-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *destroy.*

cort-ex, -icis, m., *bark.*

Cōrus, ī, m., *the north-west wind.*

cotidiānus, a, um, *daily; regular, usual.*

cotidiē, adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, ae, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

Cotus, ī, m., an Aeduan of high rank.

crassitū-dō, -dimis, f., *thickness.*

Crassus, ī, m., 1. *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, a Roman general, consul 55 B.C.; 2. his son, *Marcus Crassus*, quaestor in Caesar's army; 3. a younger son, *Publius Crassus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

crātēs, is, f., *hurdle, wickerwork.*

crēber, bra, brum, *frequent, numerous, crowded.*

crēbrō, adv., *frequently, at short intervals.*

crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *believe; trust.*

cremō, āre, āvī, ātum, *burn.*

creō, āre, āvī, ātum, *appoint, elect.*

Crēs, Crētis, m., *a Cretan.*

crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētum, *grow, become powerful, rise.*

Crītōgnātus, ī, m., a chief of the Arverni.

cruciātus, ūs, m., *torture, cruelty.*

crūdēlītās, -tātis, f., *cruelty.*

crūdēlīter, adv., *cruelly.*

crūs, crūris, n., *leg.*

cubīle, is, n., *bed, resting place.*

culmē, -minis, n., *height, summit.*

culpa, ae, f., *blame, fault.*

cultus, ūs, m., *refinement, civilization, style of life; care, habit.*

cum, prep. w. abl., *with, together with.*

cum, conj., *when, whenever, while; as, since; although; cum primum, as soon as; cum...tum, both...and, not only...but also.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, f., *hesitation, delay.*

cunctor, ārī, ātus sum, *hesitate, delay.*

cūmetus, a, um, *all, all together.*

cuncētīm, adv., *in the form of a wedge, in a compact mass.*

cuneus, ī, m., *wedge.*

cuniculus, ī, m., *burrow; mine.*

eupidē, adv., *eagerly.*

eupidītās, -tātis, f., *eagerness, eager desire.*

eupīdus, a, um, *eager, desirous, fond, ambitious.*

cup-iō, ere, -ivī, -itum, *be eager; be well disposed.*

eūr, adv., *why.*

cūrā, ae, f., *care; curae esse, be one's care, be carefully attended to.*

Curiosolites, um, m., *the Curiosolites, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*

cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attend to, take care; with gerundive, cause to be (done), have (done).*

currō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run.*

currus, ūs, m., *chariot.*

cursus, ūs, m., *running, speed, pace; course; voyage, passage.*

custōdia, ae, f., *guard, garrison.*

custōdiō, ire, īvī, itum, *guard.*

cus-tōs, -tōdis, m., *guard; watch, spy.*

D.

D., an abbreviation for **Decimus**.

Dacī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Dacians, a tribe of central Europe, living north of the Danube.*

damnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *condemn, find guilty; perf. part. as subst., damnātus, ī, m., criminal, outlaw.*

damnum, ī, n., *loss.*

Dānuvius, ī, m., *the Danube.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, down from; in accordance with, for; of, out of; about, concerning, of.*

dēbeō, ēre, nī, itum, *owe; ought, should, cannot help; in pass., be due.*

dē-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *withdraw, depart; keep aloof, shun; die.*

decem, ten.

dēceptus, a, um, from decipio.

dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *decide, determine; decree, order.*

dēcertō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight, fight a decisive battle, decide the issue.*

dēcēssī, from deceedo.

dēcēssus, ūs, m., *departure; ebb.*

Decetia, ae, f., *a town of the Aedui, on the Loire.*

dē-eidō, ere, -eidī, full.

decimus, a, um, tenth.

Decimus, ī, m., *a Roman praenomen.*

dē-eipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *deceive.*

dēclārō, āre, āvī, ātum, *declare, proclaim.*

dēclivis, e, *sloping; neut. as subst., slope.*

dēclivitās, -tātis, f., *downward slope.*

dēcrētum, ī, n., *decree, decision.*

dēcrētus, a, um, from decerno.

dēcrēvī, from decerno.

decumānus, a, um, w. porta, *the rear gate.*

decuriō, -ōnis, m., *decurion, a cavalry officer.*

dē-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, *run down.*

dēdec-us, -oris, n., *disgrace.*

dedī, from do.

dēdidī, from dedo.

dēditicius, a, um, surrendered; m. as subst., one who has surrendered, prisoner, subject.

dēditō, -ōnis, f., *surrender, submission, capitulation.*

dē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *surrender, give up; devote.*

dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, take away, withdraw, remove; bring; influence; launch; lead (home), marry.*

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, f., *exhaustion.*

dēfatīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weary, exhaust, wear out.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis, f., *revolt.*

dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēsum, *repel; defend, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *defence, protection.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender.*

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *carry, bring, convey; in pass., drift, fall, be turned aside; report; give, confer.*

dēfessus, a, um, worn out, weary, exhausted.

dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail, give out, be wanting; revolt, forsake.*

- dē-figō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, *fix, set, fasten, plant firmly.*
 dēfiniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *fix, assign.*
 dē-fluō, ere, -fluxī, -fluctum, *flow off, divide.*
 dēfore, fut. infin. of desum.
 dēformis, e, *ill-shaped, unsightly, unattractive.*
 dē-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *avoid, shun.*
 deinceps, adv., *in turn, after that.*
 deinde, adv., *then, thereupon, next.*
 dējectus, ūs, m., *slope, abrupt side.*
 dē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jeetum, *throw down, cast down; carry down, overthrow; drive off, dislodge; disappoint.*
 dēlātus, a, um, from defero.
 dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *delight; in pass., take pleasure in.*
 dēlēctus, ūs, m., *levy.*
 dēlēctus, a, um, and dēlēgī from deligo, ere.
 dēl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *destroy, overthrow; wipe out.*
 dēliberō, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss, consider, deliberate.*
 dēlibrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strip of bark, peel.*
 dēlictum, ī, n., *offence, fault.*
 dēligō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten, tie, moor.*
 dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *pick out, choose, select.*
 dēlit-ēscō, ere, -uī, *hide, lurk, lie concealed.*
 dēmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.*
 dē-metō, ere, -messuī, -messum, *cut, reap.*
 dēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *depart, move away, abandon.*
 dēmīn-uō, ere, -uī, -utum, *diminish, lessen, take away, detract, abate.*
 dē-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, *let down, lower; w. se, descend, be disheartened; perf. part., dē-missus, bowed, drooping, low-lying.*
 dēmō, ere, dēmpsī, dēemptum, *take down.*
 dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *point out, explain, state, mention.*
 dēmoror, āri, ātus sum, *delay, retard.*
 dēmum, adv., *at last, at length.*
 dēnegō, āre, āvī, ātum, *refuse, deny.*
 dēnī, ae, a, *ten each, in groups of ten.*
 dēnique, adv., *at length, finally; at least.*
 dēnsus, a, um, *dense, close, thick.*
 dēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, give notice, warn, threaten.*
 dē-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive off, or away, dislodge.*
 dēper-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *lose, forfeit.*
 dēper-eō, -īre, -iī, *perish, be lost.*
 dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *lay aside, give up: deposit, store, place.*
 dēpopulor, āri, ātus sum, *lay waste, ravage.*
 dēportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry off, remove.*
 dē-poseō, ere, -poposeī, *demand, call for.*
 dēpositus, a, um, from depono.
 dēprecātor, -tōris, m., *intercessor, advocate.*
 dēprecor, āri, ātus sum, *beg off, avert by prayer, petition against, request (not); pray for mercy.*
 dēpre-hendō, ere, -hendi, -hēnsūm, *catch, seize, surprise, come upon.*
 dēpugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight desperately.*
 dēpulsus, a, um, from depello.
 dērivō, āre, āvī, ātum, *divert, draw.*
 dērogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *withdraw, take away.*
 dē-scendō, ere, -scendi, -scēnsūm, *descend, go down; resort, have recourse, yield.*
 dēsece-ō, āre, -uī, -tum, *cut off.*

- dēser-ō, ere, -uī, -tum,** *desert, abandon, forsake*; perf. part. as adj., *solitary, lonely*.
- dēsertor, -tōris, m.,** *deserter*.
- dēsiderō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *desire, wish for*; lose, miss.
- dēsidia, ae, f.,** *idleness, indolence*.
- dēsignō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *indicate, point at, aim at*.
- dē-siliō, ire, -siluī, -sultum,** *leap down*.
- dē-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum,** *stop, cease*; abandon, give up, desist from.
- dēspectus, a, um,** from *despicio*.
- dēspēctus, ūs, m.,** *view down, prospect (from a height); height*.
- dēspēratiō, -ōnis, f.,** *despair*.
- dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *give up hope, despair*; perf. part. as adj., *desperate*.
- dē-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum,** *look down*; look down upon, despise.
- dēspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *strip, deprive*.
- dēstinō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *fasten, make fast*; appoint, set.
- dēstit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum,** *abandon, desert*.
- dē-stringō, ere, -strinxī, -strictum,** *draw*.
- dēsum, deesse, dēfui,** *be lacking, be missing, be wanting, fail*; neglect.
- dēsUPER, adv.,** from above.
- dēterior, ius, (comparative), inferior, less valuable.**
- dēterreō, ēre, nī, itum,** *deter, discourage, prevent*.
- dētēstor, ārī, ātus sum,** *curse, denounce*.
- dē-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** *detain, hinder, delay*.
- dētractō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *avoid, escape*.
- dē-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum,** *take from, withdraw, remove*; snatch from.
- dētrectō, āre,** see *detracto*.
- dētrimentōsus, a, um,** *detrimental, disadvantageous, hurtful*.
- dētrimentum, ī, n.,** *loss, injury, damage; defeat*.
- dē-trūdō, ere, -trūsī, -trūsūm,** *strip off, remove*.
- dētulī,** from *defero*.
- dēturbō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *drive off, dislodge*.
- de-ūrō, ere, -ūssī, -ūstum,** *burn down*.
- deus, ī, m.,** *god*.
- dē-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum,** *bring, convey*.
- dē-veniō, ire, -vēnī, -ventum,** *come (down)*.
- dēvexus, a, um,** *sloping, descending*; neut. as subst., *descent, incline*.
- dē-vincō, ere, -vici, -victum,** *subdue, conquer (completely)*.
- dēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *call; bring*.
- dē-voeō, ēre, -rōvī, -vōtum,** *vow, consecrate, devote*; perf. part. as subst., *devoted follower*.
- dexter, tra, trum,** *right, on the right*; fem. *dextra*, as subst., (*sc. manus*), *the right hand*.
- dī, or dīi,** from *deus*.
- Diablintes, um, m.,** *the Diablintes, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul*.
- dicīō, -ōnis, f.,** *sway, rule, power*.
- dicō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *consecrate, adjudge; give over*.
- dileō, ere, dixī, dictum,** *say, state, mention*; appoint, name; plead; adjudge, administer.
- dictiō, -ōnis, f.,** *pleading*.
- dictum, ī, n.,** *word, order, command*.
- dī-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *divide, separate*.
- diēs, ēī, m. (rarely f.),** *day; time*; in *dies, daily*.
- differō, differre, distuli, dilātum,** *differ, be different*; spread, scatter; put off, postpone.
- difficilis, e, difficult.**

difficultās, -tātis, f., *difficulty.*

dis-fidō, ere, -fīsus sum, *dis-trust, lack confidence, despair.*

dis-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *spread out; extend.*

digitus, i, m., *finger.*

dignitās, -tātis, f., *worth, esteem; reputation, rank, standing; dignily, honor.*

dignus, a, um, *worthy, worth.*

dil-judicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *decide.*

dil-lectus, a, um, *from diligo.*

diligenter, adv., *carefully, exactly, punctually, scrupulously.*

diligentia, ae, f., *carefulness, care, pains, zeal, attention.*

di-ligō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *love.*

dī-mētiōr, īri, -mēnsus sum, *measure out, proportion.*

dīmīcatiō, -ōnis, f., *struggle, contest.*

dīmīcō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight, struggle, contend, engage.*

dīmīdius, a, um, *half; neut. as subst., half.*

di-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send out, despatch; dismiss, send away; lose, let slip; abandon, give up.*

dir-ectē, adv., *straight, exactly.*

di-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *form (in straight line), arrange; perf. part. as adj., dir-ectus, a, um, straight.*

dir-imō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *break up.*

di-ripio, ere, -ripul, -reptum, *plunder, pillage, seize.*

Dis, Ditis, m., *Pluto, the god of the lower world.*

dis-cedō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *go away, withdraw, depart; with ab, leave; forsake, abandon; swerve from.*

dis-ceptātor, -oris, m., *judge, umpire.*

dis-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -cr-ctum, *disting-ish.*

discēssus, us, m., *departure, withdrawal.*

disciplina, ae, f., *training, instruction, learning, system.*

dis-elūdō, ere, -elūsī, -elūsum, *keep apart, separate.*

discō, ere, didici, learn, be in-structed.

discrimen, -minis, n., *crisis, danger, critical condition.*

dis-entiō, ere, -eussī, -eussum, *disperse, remove.*

dis-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *break up, scatter; tear off.*

dis-pār, -paris, *unequal; in-ferior.*

disparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *separate.*

di-spergō, ere, -spersi, -spersum, *scatter, disperse.*

dis-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, *place at intervals, dispose, post, arrange, set, array.*

disputātiō, -ōnis, f., *discussion, debate.*

disputō, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss, engage in discussion.*

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *dissension, disagreement, dispute, strife.*

dis-sentiō, īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *dissent, differ, disagree.*

dis-serō, ere, -sēvī, -situm, *plant here and there, scatter about.*

dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *con-ceal.*

dissipō, āre, āvī, ātum, *scatter, disperse, rout.*

dis-suādēō, ere, -suāsī, -suāsūm, *dissuade, oppose.*

dis-tineō, ere, -tinui, -tentum, *keep apart, separate; keep at a distance.*

di-stō, -stāre, *be apart, stand apart, be distant.*

dis-traho, ere, -traxī, -tractum, *tear apart, wrench asunder.*

distrib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *as-sign, allot, distribute, divide.*

distuli, from differo.

Atissimus, *superlative of dives.*

- diū**, adv., (*diūtius, diūtissimē*), *long, for a long time; quam diū, as long as.*
- diurnus**, a, um, *by day, during the day.*
- diūtinus**, a, um, *long, long-continued.*
- diūturnitās**, -tātis, f., *length, long duration.*
- diūturnus**, a, um, *long, prolonged.*
- div-er-tō**, ere, -tī, -sum, *separate; perf. part. as adj., diversus, a, um, distant, at a distance, remote; facing in a different direction; different; separate, apart.*
- div-es**, -itis, *rich.*
- Divicō**, -ōnis, m., *a leader of the Helveti.*
- dī-vidō**, ere, -visī, -visum, *divide, separate, distribute.*
- divīnus**, a, um, *divine, sacred.*
- Divitiacus**, ī, m., 1. *a leader of the Aedui; 2. a king of the Suesiones.*
- dō**, dare, dedī, datum, *give, grant, allow, afford; cause; inter se dare, exchange; w. in fugam, put; operam dare, take pains, see to it.*
- doc-eō**, ēre, -nī, -tum, *teach, inform, show, state.*
- documentum**, ī, n., *evidence, lesson, example, warning.*
- doleō**, ēre, uī, *grieve, be pained, suffer.*
- dolor**, -ōris, m., *grief, pain, distress; annoyance, vexation, chagrin, resentment.*
- dolus**, ī, m., *deceit, guile, artifice.*
- domesticus**, a, um, *at home; w. bellum, intestine, civil.*
- domicilium**, ī, n., *home, house, dwelling-place.*
- dominor**, āri, ātus sum, *rule, be master.*
- dominus**, ī, m., *master, lord.*
- Domitius**, ī, m., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul 54 B.C.*
- domus**, ūs, f., *home, house; domī, locative, at home.*
- Donnotaurus**, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Donnotaurus, a Romanized Gaul.*
- dōnō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *grant, give; present.*
- dōnum**, ī, n., *gift, present.*
- dorsum**, ī, n. or dorsus, ī, m., *ridge.*
- dōs**, dōtis, f., *dowry.*
- druīdes**, um, m., *the druids, the priests of the Gauls.*
- Dūbis**, is, m., *a river of eastern Gaul, flowing into the Arar.*
- habitatīō**, -ōnis, f., *doubt, hesitation.*
- habītō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *hesitate; doubt, have doubts.*
- habūs**, a, um, *doubtful, uncertain.*
- ducentī**, ae, a, *two hundred.*
- ducō**, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead, draw, bring; make, construct, run; marry; put off, prolong; reckon, regard, consider.*
- ductus**, ūs, m., *leadership.*
- dum**, conj., *while; until.*
- Dumnorix**, igis, m., *a leader of the Aedui.*
- duo**, ae, o, *two.*
- duodecim**, *twelve.*
- duodecimus**, a, um, *twelfth.*
- duodēnī**, ae, a, *twelve each, twelve.*
- duodēvigintī**, indeel., *eighteen.*
- dupl-ex**, -ieis, *twofold, double.*
- duplicō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *double.*
- dūritia**, ae, f., *hardship; hardness, endurance.*
- dūrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *harden.*
- Durocortorum**, ī, n., *a town of the Remi, in northern Gaul.*
- dūrus**, a, um, *hard, difficult, severe; inclement.*
- Dūrus**, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus, a military tribune with Caesar.*
- dux**, ducis, m., *leader, guide*

E.

ē, see **ex**.**Eburōnes**, **um**, **m.** plur., *the Eburones*, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.**Eburovices**, **um**, **m.** plur., *the Eburovices*, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.**ē-discō**, **ere**, **-didici**, *learn by heart*.**ēditus**, **a**, **um**, from **edo**.**ē-dō**, **ere**, **-didi**, **-ditum**, *put forth, exhibit, exercise*; perf. part. as adj., **ēditus**, **a**, **um**, *elevated, raised, rising, high*.**ēdoc-eō**, **ēre**, **-uī**, **-tum**, *explain (fully), inform, show*.**ē-ducō**, **ere**, **-dūxi**, **-ductum**, *lead out, lead forth*; *draw*.**ef-farciō**, **īre**, **-farsi**, **-fertum**, *fill up, stop up*.**effeminō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *soften, weaken, enervate, make effeminate*.**efferrō**, **efferre**, **extuli**, **elātum**, *take away, take*; *disclose, divulge, publish*; *lift up*; *elate*.**ef-ficiō**, **ere**, **-feci**, **-fectum**, *make, render, cause, produce*; *bring about, accomplish, bring to pass*; *complete, finish, cover*; *get together, furnish*.**ef-fodiō**, **ere**, **-fodi**, **-fossum**, *dig out, tear out*.**ef-fugiō**, **ere**, **-fūgi**, **-fugitum**, *escape*.**egeō**, **ēre**, **uī**, *be in need, lack*; pres. part. as adj., **egēns**, **-entis**, *needy*.**egestās**, **-tātis**, **f.**, *need, poverty, destitution*.**egō**, **meī**, **ī**.**ē-gredior**, **ī**, **-gressus sum**, *go out, depart, leave, quit*; *sally out*; *land, disembark*.**ēgregiē**, **adv.**, *excellently, well, admirably*.**ēgregius**, **a**, **um**, *eminent, marked, admirable, remarkable*.**ēgressus**, **a**, **um**, from **egredior**.**ēgressus**, **ūs**, **m.**, *landing*.**ē-jiciō**, **ere**, **-jeci**, **-jectum**, *fling out, drive out, cast up*; *w. se, rush*.**ējusmodi**, *such, of such a nature, of that sort*.**ē-lābor**, **ī**, **-lāpsus sum**, *slip away, escape*.**elātus**, **a**, **um**, from **effero**.**Elaver**, **-eris**, **n.**, *the Elaver*, a river of Central Gaul, a tributary of the Loire.**elēctus**, **a**, **um**, from **eligo**.**elephantus**, **ī**, **m.**, *elephant*.**Elenteti**, **ōrum**, **m.** plur., *the Elenteti*, a tribe of southern Gaul.**ē-liciō**, **ere**, **-licui**, *entice, draw*.**ē-ligō**, **ere**, **-lēgi**, **-lēctum**, *choose, pick*.**Elusātes**, **um**, **m.** plur., *the Elusates*, a tribe of Aquitania.**ēmigrō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *remove, emigrate*.**ēmineō**, **ēre**, **uī**, *project, stand out*.**ēminus**, **adv.**, *from or at a distance*.**ē-mittō**, **ere**, **-misi**, **-missum**, *send out*; *hurl, cast*; *throw aside, drop*.**emō**, **ere**, **ēmī**, **emptum**, *buy*.**ē-nāseor**, **ī**, **-nātus sum**, *grow out*.**enim**, **conj.**, *for, now*.**ēnūntiō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *disclose, divulge, tell, reveal*.**eō**, **īre**, **īī** (**ivī**), **ītum**, *go, march, pass, proceed*.**eō**, **adv.**, *thither, there, to that place, to them (it, etc.); thereon, on or in them*; *w. comparatives, the, all the*.**eōdem**, **adv.**, *to the same place, in the same direction*.**ephippiātus**, **a**, **um**, *equipped with saddle-cloths, using saddle-cloths*.**ephippium**, **ī**, **n.**, *saddle-cloth*.**eplstola**, **ae**, **f.**, *letter*.**Eporedorix**, **-igis**, **m.**, *the name of two chiefs of the Aedui*.

epulum, i, n., in plur., **epulae arum, f.**, *banquet*.

equ-es, -itis, m., *horseman, horse-soldier*; in plur., *cavalry*; *knight*, a Roman of rank next to a senator.

equester, tris, tre, of cavalry, cavalry.

equitatus, ūs, m., *cavalry*.

equus, ī, m., *horse*.

Eratosthenēs, is, m., a Greek writer and scholar of Alexandria, who lived from 276 to 195 B.C.

ērēctus, a, um, from **erigo**.

ēreptus, a, um, from **eripio**.

ergā, prep. w. acc., *towards*.

ergō, adv., *then, therefore*.

ē-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *raise*; perf. part. as adj., **ērēctus, a, um**, *upright, high*.

ē-ripiō, ere, -ripul, -reptum, *take away, destroy*; *save, rescue*.

errō, āre, āvī, ātum, *be mistaken*.

ē-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *sally out*.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., *sally*.

essedārius, ī, m., *charioteer, chariot-fighter*.

essedum, ī, n., *chariot, war-chariot*.

Esubīī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Esubīī*, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

et, conj., *and*; **et....et, both.... and**.

etiam, conj., *also, further*; *even, still*.

etsī, conj., *even if, although*.

ē-vādō, ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, escape.

ē-vellō, ere, -velli, -vulsum, *pull out*.

ē-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *turn out, result*.

ēventus, ūs, m., *outcome, result*; *chance*; *experience*.

ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call out, summon*; *challenge*; *call, invite*; perf. part. as subst., **ēvocātī, ōrum, m.**, *veterans (who had re-entered service)*.

ēvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rush out, burst out*.

ex, (sometimes ē before consonants), prep. w. abl., *from, out of*; *of*; *after, upon*; *in accordance with*; *in consequence of*; *of direction, on*; *above*.

exāetus, a, um, from **exigo**.

exagitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harass*.

exāminō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weigh, test*.

exanimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *kill*; *weaken, exhaust*; perf. part. as adj., **exanimātus, a, um**, *out of breath, breathless*.

ex-ardēscō, ere, -arsī, -arsum, *blaze forth*; *become enraged, become incensed*.

exaudiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hear clearly, hear*.

ex-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *go out, withdraw, leave, quit*.

ex-cellō, ere, -celluī, -celsum, *excel, be eminent*; perf. part. as adj., **excelsus, a, um**, *lofty, high*.

exceptō, āre, āvī, ātum, *catch up, take hold of*.

ex-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut down*.

ex-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *receive, meet*; *catch, come upon*; *take up, catch up, follow, succeed*.

excitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rouse, incite, stimulate*; *raise*; *kindle*.

ex-elūdō, ere, -elūsī, -elūsum, *cut off, shut out, prevent*.

excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think of*.

exeruciō, āre, āvī, ātum, *torture, torment*.

excubitor, -tōris, m., *picket, sentinel*.

excub-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, *watch by night, keep watch, be on the watch*.

exeuicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *tread or trample down*.

excursiō, -ōnis, f., *sally*.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, f., *apology*.

- excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, excuse;**
w. se, apologize.
- exemplum, ī, n., example, pre-
cedent; warning, punishment.**
- ex-eō, -īre, -ī (-ivī), -itum, go
out, go forth, leave, remove, pro-
ceed.**
- exerceō, ēre, uī, itum, train,
exercise, practise, drill, busy.**
- exercitātiō, -ōnis, f., training,
exercise, practice.**
- exercitō, āre, āvī, ātum, train,
practise.**
- exercitus, ūs, m., army.**
- ex-hauriō, īre, -hausī, -haus-
tum, remove, carry off.**
- exigō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, spend,
end; pass., be over.**
- exiguē, adv., scantily; barely,
scarcely.**
- exiguitās, -tātis, f., scantiness,
smallness, small extent, shortness,
meagreness.**
- exiguus, a, um, small, scanty.**
- eximius, a, um, remarkable, high.**
- exīstimātiō, -ōnis, f., opinion.**
- exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum, think,
believe, consider; estimate.**
- exitus, ūs, m., outlet, passage;
departure; outcome, result; end.**
- expediō, īre, ivī, itum, free;
get ready, arrange; perf. part.
as adj., expeditus, a, um, unin-
cumbered, free; rapid, active; in
light marching order, light-armed;
easy.**
- expeditiō, -ōnis, f., expedition.**
- ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum,
drive out, banish; remove, dispel.**
- exper-ior, irī, -tus sum, try,
make an attempt, test, experience;
await.**
- expiō, āre, āvī, ātum, atone for,
retrieve, repair.**
- expl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill
up; make up, make good; reach,
attain.**
- explōrātor, -tōris, m., scout.**
- explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, ex-
amine, inquire, investigate, recon-
noitre, try to find out; perf. part.
as adj., explōrātus, a, um, cer-
tain, assured.**
- ex-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum,
display; disembark, land; set
forth, state.**
- exportō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry
off, remove.**
- ex-poscō, ere, -poposeī, demand.**
- ex-primō, ere, -pressī, -pres-
sum, extort, elicit; raise.**
- expūgnātiō, -ōnis, f., storming,
taking by storm.**
- expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, storm,
take by storm, capture; subdue,
conquer.**
- expulsus, a, um, from expellō.**
- ex-quirō, ere, -quisivī, -quisi-
tum, seek out; ask for.**
- ex-sequor, ī, -secutus sum,
follow out, maintain, enforce.**
- ex-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum,
put out; bare, uncover.**
- ex-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum,
stand out, project; spring up,
arise.**
- expectō, āre, āvī, ātum, look
for, await, wait for, wait to see,
wait; expect.**
- exspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, de-
prive.**
- ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, -stinct-
um, extinguish, destroy.**
- exstitī, from existō.**
- extō, āre, stand out, project.**
- ex-struō, ere, -struxī, -struc-
tum, pile up, raise, build.**
- exsul, -sulis, m., exile.**
- exter, or exterius, era, erum,
outward, foreign; compar. ex-
terior, outer; superl. extrē-
mus, farthest, most distant, last,
extreme.**
- exterreō, ēre, uī, itum, frighten,
terrify.**
- ex-timēscō, ere, -timui, fear,
dread.**
- ex-torqueō, ēre, -torsī, -tor-
tum, force, extort.**

extrā, prep. w. acc., *outside of, beyond*.

ex-trahō, ere, -traxī, tractum, *drag out, waste by delay, fritter away*.

extrēmus, superl. of **exter**.

extrūdō, ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *thrust out, force back, shut out*.

ex-ŭō, ere, -ŭī, -ŭtum, *deprive, strip, despoil*.

ex-ūrō, ere, -ŭssī, -ŭstum, *burn up, burn*.

F.

faber, brī, m., *workman, engineer*.

Fabius, ī, m., 1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, a Roman general, B.C. 121; 2. *Caius Fabius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 3. *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

facile, adv., *easily, readily*.

facilis, e, *easy*.

facinus, -oris, n., *deed, crime*.

faciō, ere, fecī, factum, pass., fiō, fierī, factussum, *make; do, act; form, build, construct; render; bring about; in passive, take place, come to pass, happen, result*.

factiō, -ōnis, f., *party, faction*.

factum, ī, n., *deed, act, action*.

facultās, -tātis, f., *opportunity, chance, power; supply; in plur., resources, means*.

fāgus, ī, m., *beech*.

fallō, ere, fecellī, falsum, *deceive; disappoint*.

falsus, a, um, *false, empty*.

falx, falcis, f., *sickle, hook*.

fāma, ae, f., *rumor, report*.

famēs, is, f., *hunger, starvation, famine*.

familia, ae, f., *household, house, family*.

familiāris, e, *of a household; masc. as subst., intimate friend*.

familiāritās, -tātis, f., *intimacy, friendship*.

fās, n. indecl., *right (by divine law)*.

fastīgātē, adv., *obliquely, sloping*.

fastīgium, ī, n., *slope, elevation, inclination*.

fastīgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring to a point; perf. part. as adj., stopping, inclined*.

fātum, ī, n., *fate, lot*.

faveō, ēre, fāvī, fantum, *favor, be favorable to*.

fax, facis, f., *torch, brand*.

fēlicitās, -tātis, f., *good fortune, success*.

fēliciter, adv., *happily, prosperously, successfully*.

fēmina, ae, f., *woman; female*.

fem-ur, -inis, n., *thigh*.

fera, ae, f., *wild beast*.

ferāx, ācis, *fertile, fruitful*.

ferē, adv., *almost; about; generally, usually, for the most part; w. negatives, scarcely*.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, bring, carry; endure, take, stand; experience, suffer, feel; receive, win; run, go; regard; call; in pass., rush; signa ferre, advance; w. auxilium, lend; w. condicōnem, offer; w. injurias, commit*.

ferrāmentum, ī, n., *(iron) tool*.

ferrāria, ae, f., *iron mine*.

ferreus, a, um, *of iron, iron*.

ferrum, ī, n., *iron, iron point, sword*.

fertilis, e, *fertile, fruitful, rich*.

fertilitās, -tātis, f., *fertility, richness*.

ferus, a, um, *wild, fierce, ferocious*.

ferve-faelō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *heat, make red hot*.

fer-veō, ēre, -buī, *be glowing, be red hot*.

fibula, ae, f., *brace*.

fictus, a, um, *from fingo*.

fidēlis, e, *faithful*.

- fidēs, eī, f.**, *pledge, word; trust-worthiness, honor; trust, faith, confidence; devotion, loyalty, fidelity; protection, dependence, allegiance, alliance; fidem facere, give a pledge, gain belief.*
- fiducia, ae, f.**, *reliance, confidence.*
- figūra, ae, f.**, *shape.*
- filia, ae, f.**, *daughter.*
- fillus, ī, m.**, *son.*
- figō, ere, fixī, fectum**, *make up, invent.*
- finiō, ire, ivī, itum**, *limit, bound; determine, measure, describe.*
- finis, is, m.**, *end, limit; in plur., borders, territory, land, district.*
- finitimus, a, um**, *neighboring, adjacent, bordering; masc. plur. as subst., neighbors.*
- fiō, fierī, factus sum**, *pass of facio, be made, be done; take place, come to pass, happen, result.*
- firmiter, adv.**, *firmly, steadily.*
- firmitū-dō, -dinis, f.**, *strength.*
- firmō, āre, āvī, ātum**, *strengthen, secure.*
- firmus, a, um**, *strong, powerful.*
- fistūca, ae, f.**, *pile-driver, rammer.*
- Flaccus, ī, m.**, *Caius Valerius Flaccus, governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.*
- flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum**, *demand.*
- flamma, ae, f.**, *flame, fire.*
- flectō, ere, flexī, flexum**, *bend, turn.*
- fleō, ere, flēvī, flētum**, *weep, be in tears.*
- flētus, ūs, m.**, *weeping.*
- flō, āre, āvī, ātum**, *blow.*
- flōreō, ēre, ul, bloom; pres. part. as adj., flourishing, prosperous, influential.**
- flōs, flōris, m.**, *flower.*
- fluctus, ūs, m.**, *wave.*
- flūmen, -minis, n.**, *river.*
- fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxum**, *flow.*
- fodiō, ere, fōdi, fossum**, *dig.*
- foedus, -eris, n.**, *treaty.*
- fore, fut. infin. of sum.**
- foris, adv.**, *outdoor; without, outside.*
- forma, ae, f.**, *shape, form; structure.*
- fors, forte, f.**, (other cases wanting), *chance; in abl., perchance perhaps.*
- fortis, e, brave, courageous**
- fortiter, adv.**, *bravely, gallantly, stoutly.*
- fortitū-dō, -dinis, f.**, *bravery, courage.*
- fortuitō, adv.**, *by chance, accidentally.*
- fortūna, ae, f.**, *fortune, chance, lot, situation; good fortune, success; in plur., possessions, fortunes.*
- fortūnātus, a, um**, *fortunate.*
- forum, ī, n.**, *market place.*
- fossa, ae, f.**, *trench, ditch.*
- fovea, ae, f.**, *pit, pitfall.*
- frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum**, *break, shatter, wreck; crush.*
- frāter, tris, m.**, *brother.*
- frāternus, a, um**, *brotherly, of a brother.*
- fraus, fraudis, f.**, *deception, treachery.*
- fremitus, ūs, m.**, *din, noise.*
- frequēns, entis**, *numerous, in large numbers.*
- frētus, a, um**, *relying on, w. abl.*
- frigidus, a, um**, *cold.*
- frig-ns, -oris, n.**, *cold, frost, cold weather.*
- frōns, frontis, f.**, *forehead; front.*
- fructuōsus, a, um**, *fruitful, fertile.*
- fructus, ūs, m.**, *fruit, crops; advantage; profit, income.*
- frūgēs, um**, *see frux.*
- frūmentārius, a, um**, *of grain; fertile, productive; res frumentaria, supply of corn, grain, provisions.*

frūmentātiō, -ōnis, f., *getting grain, foraging.*

frūmentor, ārī, ātus sum, *get grain, forage.*

frūmentum, ī, n., *grain, corn, crops, provisions.*

frunor, ī, fructus sum, *enjoy, w. abl.*

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, without effect.*

frux, frūgis, (sing. very rare in Latin), *crops.*

Fūsius, ī, m., *Caius Fufius Cita, a Roman knight.*

fuga, ae, f., *flight, rout: in fugam convertere, conjicere or dare, to put to flight.*

fugiō, ere, fūgi, fugitum, *flee, escape; avoid, shun.*

fugitivus, ī, m., *runaway slave.*

fugō, āre, āvi, ātum, *put to flight, rout.*

fūmō, āre, āvi, ātum, *smoke.*

fūmus, ī, m., *smoke.*

funda, ae, f., *sling.*

fundi-tor, -tōris, m., *slinger.*

fundō, ere, fūdi, fūsum, *pour; scatter, rout.*

fungor, ī, funetus sum, *discharge, perform, w. abl.*

fūnis, is, m., *rope, cable.*

fūnus, -eris, n., *funeral.*

furor, -ōris, m., *madness, frenzy, rage.*

furtum, ī, n., *theft.*

fūsilis, e, *molten, softened.*

fūsus, a, um, *from fundo.*

futūrus, a, um, *from sum.*

G.

Gabalī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Gabalī, a tribe in the south of Gaul.*

Gabīnius, ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius, consul 58 B.C.*

gaesum, ī, n., *javelin, spear.*

Gāius, ī, or Cāius, ī, m., *a Roman praenomen.*

Galba, ae, m., 1. *Servius Galba, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a king of the Suesiones.*

galea, ae, f., *helmet.*

Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.* 1. The Roman provinces of Gaul, *Gallia Cisalpina* or *Citerior*, the northern part of Italy; and *Gallia Transalpina* or *Uterior*, the south-eastern part of France. 2. The country west of the Rhine and the Alps and north of the Pyrenees, thus including France, Switzerland, Belgium and part of Holland and Germany. 3. The central and largest of the three parts into which Gaul in the previous sense is divided, the *Belgae* and the *Aquitani* holding the other two.

Gallicus, a, um, *of Gaul, of the Gauls, Gallic.*

gallīna, ae, f., *hen.*

Gallus, ī, m., 1. *a Gaul; 2. Marcus Trebius Gallus, one of Caesar's officers.*

Garumna, ae, m., *the Garonne, a river of south-western Gaul.*

Garumnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Garumni, a tribe near the Pyrenees.*

Gates, um, m. plur., *the Gates, a tribe in the south-west of Gaul.*

gaudeō, ēre, gavīsus sum, *rejoice.*

Geidumnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Geidumni, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*

Genāva, ae, f., *Geneva, a town of the Allobroges, at the extreme north-east of the Province.*

gener, erī, m., *son-in-law.*

generātim, adv., *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race, nation, clan.*

genus, -eris, n., *race, family; species; kind, sort, class.*

Gergovia, ae, f., *Gergovia, a town of the Arverni, in the centre of Gaul.*

Germānia, ae, f., *Germany, the region east of the Rhine.*

Germānicus, a, um, *German, of or with the Germans.*

Germānus, ī, m., *a German.*

gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, *manage; carry on, wage; hold; do; in pass., go on.*

gladius, ī, m., *sword.*

glæba, æ, f., *clod, lump.*

glāns, glandis, f., *acorn; ball, bullet.*

glōria, æ, f., *glory, fame, reputation.*

glōrior, ārī, ātus sum, *boast of, w. abl.*

Gnaeus, ī, m., *Gnaeus, or Cneius, a Roman praenomen.*

Johannitiō, -ōnis, m., *a man of rank among the Arverni.*

Gorgobina, æ, f., *a town in the country of the Aedui, in central Gaul.*

Græcus, a, um, *Greek, Grecian; masc. as subst., a Greek.*

Grāioceli, ōrum, m. plur., *the Graioceli, an Alpine tribe between Gaul and Italy.*

grandis, e, large.

grātia, æ, f., *favor, good will; influence; gratitude, thanks; gratias agere, render thanks, thank; gratiam referre, make a grateful return, requite; gratiam habere, feel gratitude, be grateful; gratiam iure, win gratitude.*

grātulātiō, -ōnis, f., *congratulation; joy, rejoicing.*

grātulor, ārī, ātus sum, *congratulate, offer congratulations.*

grātus, a, um, *acceptable, pleasing; neut. as subst., a favor.*

gravis, e, heavy; serere, bitter, serious; solemn; w. aetas, advanced.

gravitās, -tātis, f., *weight; strength, importance.*

graviter, adv., *heavily, with effect; severely, bitterly, seriously; graviter ferre, be annoyed, feel keenly.*

gravor, ārī, ātus sum, *be reluctant, object.*

Gradii, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Gradii, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.*

gubernātor, -tōris, m., *pilot, helmsman.*

gustō, āre, āvi, ātum, *taste, eat.*

Gutruātus, ī, m., *a leader of the Carnutes.*

H.

habeō, ēre, ui, itum, *have, possess, occupy; keep; hold; w. orationem, deliver, make; treat, regard, consider; se habere, to be; w. perf. part. pass., much like Eng. auxiliary verb have.*

haesitō, āre, āvi, ātum, *stick fast, be caught.*

hāmus, ī, m., *hook.*

harpagō, -ōnis, m., *hook, grappling-iron.*

Harūdes, um, m. plur., *the Harudes, a German tribe which had crossed into Gaul.*

hand, adv., *not.*

Helvēticus, a, um, *Helvetian, of or with the Helvetii.*

Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian, of the Helvetii; masc. plur. as subst., the Helvetii, a tribe of Gaul dwelling in modern Switzerland.*

Helvii, ōrum, m. plur., *the Helvii, a tribe in the Province.*

Herecynius, a, um, w. silva, *the Hercynian forest, extending through southern and central Germany.*

hērēditās, -tātis, f., *inheritance.*

hiberna, ōrum, n. plur., *winter camp, winter-quarters.*

hibernācula, ōrum, n. plur., *winter-quarters.*

Hibernia, æ, f., *Ireland.*

hic, hæc, hōc, *this; he; the following; the present; such; often loosely, that; hōc, neut. abl. as adv., in this way, on this account, and w. comparatives, the.*

- hiē**, adv., *here, herein.*
hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum, *winter, pass the winter.*
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather.*
hinc, adv., *from this point, hence.*
Hispania, ae, f., *Spain.*
Hispanus, a, um, *Spanish.*
hom-ō, -inis, m. and f., *man, person; in plur., man, mankind, people.*
honestus, a, um, *honorable, of rank, distinguished.*
honor, -ōris, m., *honor, dignity, distinction; respect; high position.*
honōrificus, a, um, *honorable, complimentary.*
hōra, ae, f., *hour, (one-twelfth of the daylight).*
horreō, ēre, uī, *shudder at, dread.*
horribilis, e, *dreadful, formidable.*
horridus, a, um, *horrible, frightful.*
hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *urge, encourage, exhort, cheer on.*
hosp-es, -itis, m., *guest, friend.*
hospitium, ī, n., *friendship, hospitality.*
hostis, is, m., *enemy.*
hūc, adv., *to this, to this point, to this place, hither, here.*
hūjusmodī, of this sort, to this effect.
hūmānitās, -tātis, f., *refinement, accomplishments.*
hūmānus, a, um, *civilized, refined.*
humilis, e, *low, inferior, humble, of little importance, obscure.*
humilitās, -tātis, f., *lowness; weakness, insignificance.*
- I.**
- ibi**, adv., *there.*
Iccius, ī, m., *a leader of the Remi.*
ictus, ūs, m., *blow, stroke.*
- ideirēō**, adv., *on that account, for this reason.*
idem, eadem, idem, *the same; also.*
identidem, adv., *again and again.*
idōneus, a, um, *suitable, fit.*
Idūs, num, f. plur., *the Ides (the 13th of each month, but in March, May, July and October the 15th).*
Ignis, is, m., *fire; camp fire.*
ignōbilis, e, *unknown, obscure.*
ignōminia, ae, f., *disgrace.*
ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *not know, be unacquainted with.*
ignōscō, ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, *forgive, pardon, w. dat.*
ignōtus, a, um, *unknown.*
illātus, a, um, *from infero.*
ille, illa, illud, *that, he.*
illie, adv., *there, in that place.*
illigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bind, at tach, fasten.*
illō, adv., *to that point, thither, there.*
illustris, e, *distinguished, remarkable.*
Illyricum, ī, n., *a district along the eastern coast of the Adriatic.*
imbēcillitās, -tātis, f., *weakness, feebleness.*
im-ber, -bris, m., *rain, rainstorm.*
imitor, ārī, ātus sum, *imitate.*
immānis, e, *huge, enormous.*
immineō, ēre, uī, *be near at hand; threaten.*
im-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send against, hurl; let down, sink, let in.*
immolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *sacrifice.*
immortālis, e, *immortal.*
immūnis, e, *free from taxation or tribute.*
immūnitās, -tātis, f., *freedom, exemption from public service.*
imparātus, a, um, *unprepared.*
impedimentum, ī, n., *hindrance, in plur., baggage, baggage-train, baggage-horses.*

Impediō, ire, īvi, itum, *hinder, obstruct, entangle, embarrass; perf. part. as adj., impeditus, a, um, hampered, occupied, intricate, difficult, impassable.*

im-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *urge, instigate, incite.*

impendeō, ēre, overhang.

Impēnsus, a, um, *expensive, high.*

imperātor, -tōris, m., commander *(in chief).*

imperātum, ī, n., order, command.

imperfectus, a, um, *unfinished, unaccomplished.*

imperitus, a, um, *inexperienced, unacquainted, w. gen.*

imperium, ī, n., command, order; power, supreme power, control, rule, supremacy.

imperō, āre, āvi, ātum, *levy upon, demand, require, order to furnish; order, command, rule.*

impetrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *obtain, obtain one's request, accomplish, prevail on.*

impetus, ūs, m., attack, charge; fury, rush, violence.

impius, a, um, *wicked, unholy.*

im-pleō, āre, āvi, ātum, or -ui, -itum, *interweave, interlace.*

implorō, āre, āvi, ātum, *beg, entreat, beseech.*

im-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, *place on, put on, mount; levy, impose.*

importō, āre, āvi, ātum, *bring in, introduce, import.*

imprimis, or in primis, *especially, particularly.*

improbus, a, um, *wicked, unprincipled.*

imprōvisus, a, um, *unforeseen; abl., improviso, as adv., so de improviso, unexpectedly, un-awares.*

Imprūdēns, -entis, *unsuspecting, off one's guard.*

Imprudentia, ac, f., *thoughtlessness, indiscretion.*

impūb-ēs, -eris, *chaste, unmarried.*

impugnō, āre, āvi, ātum, *attack, fight.*

impulsus, a, um, *from impello.*

impulsus, ūs, m., instigation.

impūne, adv., *with impunity.*

impūnitas, -tātis, f., impunity, *exemption from punishment.*

īmus, a, um, *superlative of inferus.*

in, prep. (1) w. abl., in, at, within, on; among, in the country of; over; considering, in view of; in the case of, in regard to; (2) w. acc., into, to; towards, against, upon, on; until; for, with a view to, according to; in.

inānis, e, *empty, idle, mere.*

ineautē, adv., *carelessly, incautiously.*

ineautus, a, um, *careless, off one's guard.*

incendium, ī, n., fire, burning.

in-cendō, ere, -cendi, -censum, *set on fire, burn; arouse, inflame.*

incertus, a, um, *uncertain, untrustworthy, confused.*

in-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cāsum, *fall in with, come upon; happen, occur.*

in-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cism, *cut into.*

in-cipiō, ere, -cepi, -ceptum, *begin.*

incisus, a, um, *from incido.*

incitō, āre, āvi, ātum, *urge on, impel, set in motion; arouse, excite; w. se, rush on, rush in; perf. part. w. equus, at full speed.*

incognitus, a, um, *unknown.*

incol-ō, ere, -ui, inhabit, dwell, live.

incolumis, e, *safe, unharmed, in safety, without loss.*

incommodē, adv., *disastrously, unfortunately, badly.*

incommodum, ī, n., disadvantage, misfortune, disaster, loss, reverses.

- Incrēdibilis**, *c*, *incredible, extraordinary*.
- inerepītō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *reproach, upbraid, taunt*.
- in-eumbō**, *ere, -cubī, -cubitum*, *apply or decole one's self*.
- incursiō**, *-ōnis, f.*, *raid, inroad*.
- incursus**, *ūs, m.*, *attack, incursion*.
- incūsō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *blame, attack, censure*.
- inde**, *adv.*, *from that place, thence; then, next*.
- indiciū**, *ī, n.*, *information*.
- in-dicō**, *ere, -dixī, -dictum*, *appoint, proclaim, call*.
- indictus**, *a, um*, (1) *from indico*; (2) *unpleaded, unheard*.
- indignē**, *adv.*, *unworthily, undeservedly*.
- indignitās**, *-tātis, f.*, *indignity, disgrace*.
- indignor**, *ārī, ātus sum*, *be indignant*.
- indignus**, *a, um*, *unworthy, unbecoming*.
- indiligēns**, *-entis*, *careless, indifferent*.
- indiligenter**, *adv.*, *carelessly*.
- indiligentia**, *ae, f.*, *indifference, lack of energy*.
- in-dūcō**, *ere, -dūxī, -ductum*, *lead on, influence, induce; cover*.
- indulgentia**, *ae, f.*, *indulgence, leniency*.
- indul-geō**, *ēre, -sī, -tum*, *favor, w. dat.*
- ind-uō**, *ere, -uī, -ūtum*, *put on; w. se, fall upon, get entangled*.
- industriē**, *adv.*, *actively, zealously*.
- indūtiac**, *ārum, f. plur.*, *truce*.
- Indutiomarus**, *ī, m.*, *a chief of the Treveri*.
- in-eō**, *-īre, -iī(-ivī), -itum*, *enter upon, adopt, form, make; estimate; begin; win*.
- inermis**, *e, or inermus, a, um*, *unarmed*.
- in-ers**, *-ertis*, *lazy, unmanly*.
- Infāmia**, *ae, f.*, *dishonor, disgrace, disrepute*.
- Infāns**, *-antis, m.*, *infant, child*.
- infectus**, *a, um*, *undone, unaccomplished*.
- Inferō**, *inferre, intulī, illātum*, *bring in, put in or upon; introduce, import; cause, inflict, inspire; w. bellum, make, wage (offensive); w. signa, advance; w. causam, advance, allege*.
- Inferus**, *a, um*, *low; compar. inferior, lower; inferior; superl. infimus, lowest, at the foot or base; neut. as subst., the bottom, the foot*.
- Infestus**, *a, um*, *hostile*.
- in-ficiō**, *ere, -fēcī, -fectum*, *stain*.
- Infidēlis**, *e*, *unfaithful*.
- in-figō**, *ere, -fixī, -fixum*, *fasten to, fix on*.
- Infimus**, *a, um*, *superl. of inferus*.
- Infinitus**, *a, um*, *endless, boundless, vast*.
- Infirmitās**, *-tātis, f.*, *weakness, fickleness, inconstancy*.
- Infirmus**, *a, um*, *weak*.
- Infixus**, *a, um*, *from infigo*.
- in-flectō**, *ere, -flexī, -flexum*, *bend*.
- in-fluō**, *ere, -fluxī, -fluxum*, *flow, empty*.
- in-fodiō**, *ere, -fōdī, -fossam*, *bury*.
- Infra**, (1) *adv.*, *below, further down*; (2) *prep. w. acc.*, *below, less than*.
- ingēns**, *entis*, *huge, very large*.
- ingrātus**, *a, um*, *displeasing, unacceptable*.
- in-gredior**, *ī, -gressus sum*, *enter*.
- inimicitia**, *ae, f.*, *enmity, feud*.
- inimicus**, *a, um*, *unfriendly, hostile; masc. as subst., enemy*.
- inīquitās**, *-tātis, f.*, *injustice, unfairness; disadvantage, unfavorable nature or position*.

iniquus, a, um, *uneven; unfavorable; unfair, unjust.*

initium, ī, n., *beginning, first; edge, frontier, borders; elements.*

initus, a, um, *from in eo.*

in-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jeetum, *put on, lay on; inspire, infuse, cause.*

in-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum, *impose.*

injūria, ae, f., *wrong, injustice, wrong-doing, injury, violence, outrage.*

injūssū, abl. *used as adv., without one's orders.*

in-nāscor, ī, -nātus sum, *spring up in; in perf., be inborn, be innate.*

in-nitor, ī, -nīsus or -nīxus sum, *lean on.*

innocēns, entis, *innocent, guiltless.*

innocentia, ae, f., *innocence, integrity.*

inopia, ae, f., *want, scarcity, lack, privation.*

inopināns, -antis, *not expecting, unawares, unprepared, off one's guard.*

inquam, inquit, *defective verb, say.*

insciēns, entis, *not knowing, being unaware.*

inscientia, ae, f., *ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.*

inseius, a, um, *ignorant, unaware.*

in-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

in-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, *insert.*

insidiae, ārum, f. plur., *ambush, stratagem, treachery.*

insidiar, āri, ātus sum, *lie in wait.*

insignis, e, *marked, notable, signal; n. as subst., insigne, is, ensign, badge, token, decoration.*

in-siliō, īre, -sili, -sultum, *leap at or on.*

insimulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *charge, accuse.*

insinuō, āre, āvī, ātum, *insinuate; w. se, work one's way in.*

in-sistō, ere, -stiti, *stand, keep one's footing; enter upon, pursue, adopt, devote one's self.*

insolenter, adv., *insolently, haughtily, immoderately.*

inspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *look on.*

instābilis, e, *unsteady, changeable.*

instar, accus. as adv., *like, w. gen.*

instigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *urge on, incite.*

instit-nō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *undertake, begin, set to; adopt, establish, settle; equip, get ready; train, teach; draw up.*

institutum, ī, n., *custom, practice.*

in-stō, āre, -stiti, -stātum, *press forward, press on; be at hand; threaten, impend.*

īnstrimentum, ī, n., *equipment, furniture.*

in-struō, ere, -struxi, -structum, *draw up, arrange; build, set up, equip.*

īnuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *train.*

īnuētus, a, um, *unaccustomed.*

insula, ae, f., *island.*

īsuper, adv., *above, on top.*

integer, gra, grum, *unimpaired, fresh, untouched, complete.*

in-tegō, ere, -texi, -tectum, *cover over, cover.*

intel-legō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *understand, be aware, perceive, see, know, learn.*

inten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *stretch, strain; perf. partic., intent, occupied, engrossed, eager.*

inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among, during; inter se, one another, to or with one another.*

inter-eēdō, ere, -eēssi, -eēssum, *come between, be between, intervene, elapse, exist between.*

inter-eipiō, ere, -eēpi, -cep-tum, *intercept, cut off.*

inter-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *cut off.*

- inter-dicō, ere, -dixī, -dictum,** *forbid, warn; prohibit, exclude.*
- interdiſ, adv.,** *by day, in the day-time.*
- interdum, adv.,** *sometimes.*
- intereā, adv.,** *meanwhile, in the meantime.*
- inter-eō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum,** *perish.*
- interest, from intersum.**
- inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *slay, put to death, kill.*
- interim, adv.,** *meanwhile.*
- interior, comparative adj.,** *inner, interior; plur., those living in the interior.*
- interitus, ūs, m.,** *death, destruction.*
- inter-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum,** *place between, interpose; in pass., be between, intervene, come at intervals.*
- inter-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** *leave off, interrupt, stop, break off, discontinue; cease, neglect; let pass, in pass., go by, intervene, elapse; separate; leave free, leave open.*
- interneciō, -ōnis, f.,** *destruction, annihilation, extermination.*
- interpellō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *interrupt, disturb, interfere with.*
- inter-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum,** *interpose; allege; pledge; put forward; in pass., intervene.*
- inter-pres, -pretis, m.,** *interpreter.*
- interpretor, ārī, ātus sum,** *interpret, explain.*
- interrogō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *question.*
- inter-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** *break down, destroy.*
- inter-scindō, ere, -scidi, -scissum,** *cut down, break down, destroy.*
- inter-sum, -esse, -fuī,** *be between, be engaged in, take part in; as impersonal verb, interest, it is of importance, it concerns.*
- intervallum, ī, n.,** *interval, distance.*
- inter-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum,** *come up, appear.*
- interventus, ūs, m.,** *intervention, coming on.*
- intex-ō, ere, -nī, -tum,** *weave together, plait.*
- intoleranter, adv.,** *eagerly, recklessly.*
- intrā, prep. w. acc.,** *within.*
- intritus, a, um,** *unexhausted, fresh, not fatigued.*
- intrō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *enter.*
- intrō-ducō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum,** *lead in, bring in.*
- intro-eō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum,** *come in, enter.*
- introitus, ūs, m.,** *entrance, approach.*
- intrō-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** *send in, let in, admit.*
- intrōrsus, adv.,** *within, into the interior, inside.*
- intrō-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** *break in, burst in.*
- intueor, ērī, itus sum,** *gaze on, look at.*
- intulī, from infero.**
- intus, adv.,** *within, inside.*
- inūsitātus, a, um,** *unusual, strange, novel, unfamiliar.*
- inūtilis, e,** *useless, unserviceable, unsuitable.*
- in-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum,** *come upon, find; learn.*
- inventor, -tōris, m.,** *inventor, discoverer.*
- inveter-āscō, ere, -āvī, -ātum,** *become established, settle.*
- invicem, adv.,** *in turn.*
- invictus, a, um,** *unconquered, invincible.*
- in-videō, ēre, -vidī, -vīsum,** *envy, be jealous of, w. dat.*
- invidia, ae, f.,** *envy, jealousy.*
- inviolātus, a, um,** *inviolate.*
- invitō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *invite, induce, allure.*

invītus, a, um, *unwilling, against one's will.*

ipse, a, um, *himself, he himself, itself, etc.; very.*

irācundia, ae, f., *wrath, anger, passion.*

irācundus, a, um, *passionate.*

ir-rīdēō, ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *ridicule, jeer at.*

irrīdiculē, adv., *without humor.*

ir-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *burst in, break in, rush, dash.*

irruptiō, -ōnis, f., *attack, assault.*

is, ea, id, *that; he, she, it, they; w. rel., the; such; abl. eō as adv., so much, the, on that account.*

iste, a, ud, *that of yours, that.*

ita, adv., *so, thus, in this way, as follows, accordingly.*

Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*

itaque, adv., *therefore, so, accordingly.*

item, adv., *likewise, also, in the same way.*

iter, itineris, n., *route, march, road, journey; magnum iter, a forced march; iter facere, to march.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

Itius, adj. with portus, *a harbor on the north-east coast of Gaul.*

J.

jaccō, ēre, uī, itum, *lie, be fallen, be dead.*

jacio, ere, jēcī, jactum, *throw, cast, hurl; throw up.*

jaetō, āre, āvī, ātum, *shake, toss, fling; discuss.*

jactūra, ae, f., *loss, sacrifice; offer.*

jaculum, ī, n., *javelin.*

jam, adv., *now, at length, already; w. negatives, any more, longer.*

juba, ae, f., *mane.*

jubeō, ēre, jūssī, jūssum, *order, bid, command.*

jūdicium, ī, n., *trial; judgment, decision, opinion; abl. judicio, by design, purposely.*

jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *judge, decide, consider, think, pronounce.*

jugum, ī, n., *yoke; ridge, summit, crest.*

jumentum, ī, n., *beast of burden, horse.*

junctūra, ae, f., *joining.*

jungō, ere, junxī, junctum, *join, unite.*

jūnior, comparative of juvenis.

Jūnius, ī, m., *Quintus Junius, one of Caesar's officers.*

Juppiter, Jovis, m., *Jupiter, the supreme god of the Romans.*

Jūra, ae, m., *a mountain range in Eastern Gaul.*

jūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *swear, take an oath.*

jūs, jūris, n., *right, rights, law, justice.*

jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, n., *oath.*

jūssū, abl. used as adv., *by order.*

jūstitia, ae, f., *justice, fairness.*

jūstus, a, um, *just, right ful, law-ful, fair; proper, regular, due.*

juvenis, e (comparative jūnior), *young; m. as subst., a young man.*

juven-tūs, -tūtis, f., *youth; as collective, youth, young men.*

juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, *aid, help, assist.*

jūxtā, adv., *near, close by.*

K.

Kalendae, ārum, f. plur., *the Calends, the first day of the month.*

L.

L., *an abbreviation for Lucius.*

Laberius, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus, a military tribune with Caesar.*

Labienus, ī, m., *Titus Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

labor, -ōris, m., *toil, hardship, labor, exertion; endurance, hardness.*

lābor, ī, lāpsus sum, *slip; err, do wrong, fall away; fail, be disappointed.*

labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *toil, strive, be anxious; be in difficulty, be hard pressed.*

labrum, ī, n., *lip; edge, rim.*

lae, lactis, n., *milk.*

laeess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, *provoke, harass, attack, assail.*

laerima, ae, f., *tear.*

laerimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *weep.*

laeus, ūs, m., *lake.*

laedō, ere, laesī, laesum, *injure; violate, break.*

laetatiō, -ōnis, f., *joy, rejoicing.*

laetitia, ae, f., *joy, gladness.*

laetus, a, um, *glad, joyful, rejoicing.*

languidē, adv., *with little energy.*

languidus, a, um, *weary, faint, listless, not active.*

languor, -ōris, m., *exhaustion, listlessness.*

lap-is, -idis, m., *stone.*

lāpsus, a, um, *from labōr.*

laqueus, ī, m., *noose.*

largior, Irī, itus sum, *give bountifully; bribe; supply, afford.*

largiter, adv., *abundantly, greatly.*

largitiō, -ōnis, f., *lavishness, bounty, liberality.*

lassitū-dō, -dinis, f., *fatigue, exhaustion.*

lātē, adv., *widely, far.*

latēbra, ae, f., *hiding-place.*

lateō, ēre, nī, *lurk, lie concealed; escape notice.*

lātitū-dō, -dinis, f., *width, breadth, extent.*

Latovieī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Latovici, neighbors of the Helvetii.*

latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber.*

latrōcinium, ī, n., *robbery, raid.*

lat-us, -eris, n., *side, flank.*

lātus, a, um, and **lātūrus**, a, um, *from fero.*

lātus, a, um, *broad, wide, extensive.*

laudō, āre, āvī, ātum, *praise, commend.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise, merit, glory, fame.*

lavō, āre, āvī, ātum, or **lāvī**, lautum or lōtum, *wash; in pass., bathe.*

laxō, āre, āvī, ātum, *loosen, extend, open out.*

lēgatiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*

lēgātus, ī, m., *ambassador, envoy; lieutenant, an officer next in rank to the commander-in-chief.*

legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion, a body of soldiers of the nominal strength of 6000, divided into ten cohorts.*

legiōnārius, a, um, *of a legion, legionary.*

Lemannus, ī, m., *a lake now called Geneva, in eastern Gaul.*

Lemovices, um, m. plur., *the Lemovices, a tribe in south-western Gaul.*

lēnis, e, *gentle, light.*

lenitās, -tātis, f., *gentleness, sluggishness.*

lēniter, adv., *gently, slightly, with little vigor.*

Lepontii, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Lepontii, an Alpine tribe.*

lep-us, -oris, m., *hare.*

Leueī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Leuci, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.*

Levaeī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Levaci, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.*

levis, e, *light; slight, trifling; weak, fickle.*

levitās, -tātis, f., *lightness; fickleness, thoughtlessness, inconstancy.*

levō, āre, āvī, ātum, *free, relieve.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*

Lexovii, ōrum, m. plur., *the Lexovii, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.*

libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly, with pleasure.*

liber, **era**, **orum**, *free, independent; unrestricted, undisturbed, untrammelled, unincumbered.*

liberalitās, -**tātis**, f., *generosity, liberality.*

liberaliter, adv., *generously, graciously, kindly.*

liberē, adv., *freely, without check or restraint.*

liberī, **orum**, m. plur., *children.*

liberō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *free, set free.*

libertās, -**tātis**, f., *liberty, freedom.*

librīlis, e, *of a pound weight.*

licentia, ae, f., *recklessness, lawlessness.*

liceor, **ērī**, **itus sum**, *bid (at auction).*

licet, **ēre**, **licuit**, *it is permitted, allowable; freely, may, might.*

Liger, -**eris**, m., the river Loire, in the central part of Gaul.

lignātiō, -**ōnis**, f., *getting wood.*

lignātor, -**tōris**, m., *wood-cutter, gatherer of wood.*

lilium, **ī**, n., *lily.*

līnea, ae, f., *line.*

Lingones, um, m. plur., the *Lingones*, a tribe in the eastern part of central Gaul.

lingua, ae, f., *tongue; language, speech.*

lingula, ae, f., *little tongue; tongue of land, headland.*

linter, -**tris**, f., *small boat, skiff.*

līnum, **ī**, n., *flax.*

lis, **litis**, f., *lawsuit, dispute; damages.*

Liscus, **ī**, m., a leading man of the Aedui.

Litaviceus, **ī**, m., a leading man of the Aedui.

littera, ae, f., *letter, character; in plur., letter, despatch; documents, records.*

līt-us, -**oris**, n., *shore.*

locus, **ī**, m.; in plur., **locā**, **ōrum**, n.; *place, spot, point, position, ground, situation, country; rank; light, character; opportunity, chance; in plur., space, ground, district, region, country, place.*

locutus, a, um, from **loquor**.

longē, adv., *far; long.*

longinquus, a, um, *distant, remote; long, long-continued, protracted.*

longitū-dō, -**dinis**, f., *length.*

longurius, **ī**, m., *long pole.*

longus, a, um, *long; distant; tedious; navis longa, war-ship, galley.*

loquor, **ī**, **locutus sum**, *speak, say, converse.*

lōrica, ae, f., *coat of mail; breast-work.*

Lucānius, **ī**, m., *Quintus Lucanius, a centurion in Caesar's army.*

Lūcius, **ī**, m., a Roman praenomen.

Luclerius, **ī**, m., a leading Gaudi, belonging to the Cadurci.

Lugotor-ix, -**igis**, m., a Briton of rank.

lūna, ae, f., *moon.*

Lutētia, ae, f., a town of the Parisii, on the Seine.

lūx, **lūcis**, f., *light, dawn; prima lux, daybreak, dawn.*

luxuria, ae, f., *luxury, luxurious living.*

M.

M., an abbreviation for **Marcus**.

māceria, ae, f., *wall.*

māchinātiō, -**ōnis**, f., *machine, engine.*

maestus, a, um, *sad, sorrowful.*

magis, comparative adv., (see **magnopere**), *more, rather.*

magistrātus, **us**, m., *magistrate; office, magistracy.*

māgnificus, a, um, *splendid, grand.*

māgnitū-dō, -**dinis**, f., *greatness, vastness, great size; size, extent.*

māgnopere, adv. (*magis, mājimē*), *greatly, very, strongly, earnestly*.

māgnus, a, um (*mājor, mājimus*), *great, large; loud; serious, extensive; māgnī*, as adv., *highly, greatly*.

mājestās, -tātis, f., *dignity, majesty*.

mājor, comparative of **māgnus**; in m. plur. as subst., *elders, ancestors, fathers*.

malacia, ae, f., *calm, lull*.

male, adv. (*pējus, pessimē*), *badly, ill, unsuccessfully*.

maleficium, ī, n., *mischievousness, outrage, harm*.

Mallius, ī, m., *Lucius Mallius*, a Roman proconsul defeated by the Aquitani, B.C. 78.

mālō, mālī, mālūī, *prefer*.

mālus, ī, m., *mast, (upright) beam*.

mandātum, ī, n., *order, commission, instruction, message*.

mandō, āre, āvī, ātum, *order, instruct; entrust, give up, commit, betake*.

Mandubiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Mandubiī*, a tribe in central Gaul.

Mandubracius, ī, m., a Briton of high rank among the Trinobantes.

māne, adv., *in the morning*.

mancō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm, *stay, remain; abide by, stand by*.

manipulāris, is, m., *one belonging to a company or manipulus, comrade*.

manipulus, ī, m., *maniple, company (one-third of a cohort)*.

mānsuē-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tame*.

mānsuēfiō, passive of **mānsuē-facio**.

mānsuētū-dō, -diis, f., *gentleness, clemency*.

manus, ūs, f., *hand; band, force; manu*, by art, by force; *manus dare*, yield, give in.

Marcomanī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Marcomani*, a German tribe.

Mārens, ī, m., *Marcus*, a Roman praenomen.

mare, maris, n., *sea*.

maritimus, a, um, *on or of the sea, on the coast, maritime, naval*.

Marius, ī, m., *Caius Marius*, a famous Roman general and popular leader, who lived from B.C. 157 to 83.

Mars, Martis, m., *Mars*, the god of war.

mās, maris, m., *male*.

matara, ae, f., (*Celtic*) *javelin, pike*.

māter, -tris, f., *mother; mater familiae, matron*.

māteria, ae, f., *timber, wood, material*.

māteriēs, ēī, f., *timber, wood, material*.

māterior, ārī, ātus sum, *get timber, collect wood*.

Matiscō, -ōnis, f., a town of the Aedui.

mātrimōnium, ī, n., *marriage*.

Mātrona, ae, f., the river *Marne*, in northern Gaul.

mātūrē, adv. (*mātūrius, mātūrimē*), *early, soon*.

mātūr-ēscō, ere, -uī, *ripen*.

mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten, make haste*.

mātūrus, a, um, *early; ripe*.

mājimē, superlative adv. (see **māgnopere**), *very greatly, very much, chiefly, most, especially*.

māximus, a, um, superlative of **māgnus**.

Māximus, ī, m., *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, a Roman general, B.C. 121.

medeor, ērī, *remedy, relieve*.

mediocriter, c, *moderate, ordinary, common*.

mediocriter, adv., *in a slight or small degree*.

Mediomatricī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Mediomatrici*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

mediterrāneus, a, um, *inland, central, interior*.

medlus, a, um, middle, central ; intermediate ; generally rendered by *middle* or *half-way*.

Meldi, ōrum, m. plur., the Meldi, a tribe in northern Gaul.

melior, comparative of bonus.

Melodūnum, i, n., a town of the Senones in northern Gaul.

membrum, i, n., limb.

meminī, isse, in perf. tenses only, remember, recollect.

memoria, ae, f., memory, recollection, remembrance, tradition ; time.

Menapii, ōrum, m. plur., the Menapii, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

mendāciūm, i, n., lie, falsehood, false statement.

mēns, mentis, f., mind, intellect.

mēnsis, is, m., month.

mēnsūra, ae, f., measure.

mentīo, -ōnis, f., mention.

mereātor, -tōris, m., trader, merchant.

mereatūra, ae, f., trading, traffic, commerce.

mer-cēs, -cēdis, f., pay, hire.

Mercurius, i, m., Mercury, one of the Roman gods.

mereō, ēre, uī, itum, and mereor, ēri, itus sum, deserre, win, earn ; serve.

meridiānus, a, um, of midday, of noon.

meridiēs, ēī, m., midday, noon ; the south.

meritum, i, n., service, merit, desert ; fault.

Messāla, ae, m., Marcus Valerius Messala, consul B.C. 61.

mētlor, īrī, mēnsus sum, measure, measure out, distribute.

Metlosedum, i, n., a town in northern Gaul.

Mētins, i, m., an envoy of Caesar's.

metō, ere, messuī, messum, reap, cut grain.

metus, ūs, m., fear.

meus, a, um, my, mine.

mīl-es, -itis, m., soldier, man ; as collective, the soldiers, soldiery.

mīlitāris, e, military, of war.

mīlitia, ae, f., (military) service.

mille, indeclinable adj. ; in plur., millia, ium, n. ; thousand.

Minerva, ae, f., Minerva, a Roman goddess.

minimē, adv., superlative of parum, by no means, very little, least.

minimus, superlative of parvus.

minor, comparative of parvus.

Minucius, i, m., Lucius Minucius Basilus, one of Caesar's officers.

mīn-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, lessen, diminish, decrease ; settle ; ebb.

minus, adv., comparative of parum, less ; not ; not very, not so well.

mīror, āri, ātus sum, wonder at, wonder.

mīrus, a, um, wonderful, strange, surprising.

miser, era, erum, wretched, poor, miserable.

miserēcordia, ae, f., pity, mercy, clemency.

miseror, āri, ātus sum, bewail, deplore, lament.

missus, ūs, m., sending, despatch.

mīlis, e, gentle ; superl. adv., mī-tissimē, gently, mildly.

mittō, ere, mīsi, missum, send, despatch ; hurl, throw.

mōbilis, e, fickle, changeable.

mōbilitās, -tātis, f., fickleness ; quickness, activity.

mōbiliter, adv., easily.

moderor, āri, ātus sum, manage, check, control, restrain.

modestia, ae, f., self-control, moderation.

modo, adv., only, but, merely ; just, but now, but recently.

modus, i, m., measure, amount ; fashion, style, manner, kind, sort.

moenia, ium, n. plur., walls, fortifications.

mōlēs, is, f., mass; dyke, dam.

molestē, adv., grievously; moleste ferre, to be annoyed, be vexed.

mōlimentum, ī, n., trouble, difficulty.

molitus, a, um, from molo.

molliō, īre, īvī, ītum, soften, lessen; make easy.

mollis, e, weak, yielding, changeable, not firm; smooth, level.

mollitia, ae, f., weakness, feebleness.

mollitēs, ēī, f., weakness, lack of endurance.

mol-ō, ere, -uī, -itum, grind.

mōmentum, ī, n., weight, influence, importance.

Mona, ae, f., an island in the Irish channel.

moneō, ēre, uī, itum, warn, advise, remind, urge.

mōns, montis, m., mountain; mountain range; hill.

mora, ae, f., delay.

morbus, ī, m., disease, sickness.

Morini, ōrum, m. plur., the Morini, a tribe in the north of Gaul.

moriōr, morī, mortuus sum, die.

Moritasgus, ī, m., a chief of the Senones.

moror, ārī, ātus sum, delay, wait, stay, linger; hinder, retard.

mors, mortis, f., death.

mortuus, a, um, from morior.

mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, way; in plur., habits, character.

Mosa, ae, m., the Meuse, a river in north-eastern Gaul.

mōtus, ūs, m., movement, motion, change; uprising, disturbance, revolt.

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move; influence.

mulier, -eris, f., woman.

mūliō, -ōnis, m., muleteer, mule-driver.

multitū-dō, -dinis, f., large number, great number, large body, multitude; number, amount; the common people.

multō, āre, āvī, ātum, fine; deprive.

multum, adv. (plūs, plūrimum), much, often, very.

multus, a, um (plūs, plūrimus), much; in plur., many; w. dies or nox, far advanced; multo as adv., much, far.

mūlus, ī, m., mule.

Mūnātinus, ī, m., Lucius Munatius Plancus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

mundus, ī, m., world, universe.

mūnimentum, ī, n., fortification, defence.

mūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, fortify, protect, defend, secure; w. iter, build, make.

munitiō, -ōnis, f., fortification, construction; fortified works, defences.

mūn-us, -eris, n., duty, task, service; gift, present.

mūrālis, e, of a wall, used for or from walls, mural.

mūrus, ī, m., wall.

mūseculus, ī, m., shed, penthouse, covered hut.

mutilus, a, um, maimed, broken.

mūtō, āre, āvī, ātum, change.

N.

nactus, a, um, from nanciscor.

nam, conj., for, now.

Nannēius, ī, m., a leading man of the Helvetii.

Nannētes, um, m. plur., the Nannētes, a tribe at the mouth of the Loire.

namque, conj., for.

nanciscor, ī, nactus or nactus sum, find, get, come upon, obtain, secure.

Nantnâtes, um, m. plur., *the Nantuates*, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.

Narbô, ônis, f., a town in the southern part of the province.

nâscor, **î**, **nâtus** sum, *be born, be sprung from, arise, be bred; of metals, be found.*

Nasua, ae, m., a leader of the Suebi.

nâtâlis, e, *of birth; dies natalis, birthday.*

nâtiô, -ônis, f., *race, people, tribe, nation.*

nâtivus, a, um, *natural.*

nâtûra, ae, f., *nature, character.*

nâtus, a, um, *from nascor.*

nâtus, ñs, m., *birth.*

nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*

nauticus, a, um, *naval, nautical.*

nâvâlis, e, *naval, of ships.*

nâvicula, ae, f., *small boat, skiff.*

nâvigatiô, -ônis, f., *sailing, navigation, voyage.*

nâvigium, **î**, n., *ship, vessel.*

nâvigô, âre, âvi, âtum, *sail.*

nâvis, is, f., *ship, boat, vessel; navis longa, warship; navis oneraria, transport.*

nâvô, âre, âvi, âtum, *do energetically; operam navare, do one's best or utmost.*

nê, conj., *that not, lest; w. verbs of urging, asking, etc., not to; w. verbs of hindering, from; w. verbs of fearing, that, lest; w. subj. standing for imperative, not.*

nê, adv., *not; ne. quidem, not even.*

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, in direct questions untranslated; in indirect questions, *whether; neque, or not.*

nec, see **neque**.

necessârius, a, um, *necessary, urgent, pressing; critical; m. as subst., connection, intimate friend, relative; necessariô, abl. as adv., of necessity, unavoidably.*

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary, inevitable; necesse est, often to be rendered by must, can but.*

necessitâs, -tâtis, f., *necessity, need; urgency, exigency; interest.*

necessitû-dô, -dinis, f., *intimacy, close friendship.*

neque, conj., *or not.*

necô, âre, âvi, âtum, *kill, put to death.*

neubi, conj., *that nowhere.*

nefârius, a, um, *wicked, atrocious, infamous.*

nefâs, n. indecl., *wrong, crime.*

neg-legô, ere, -lêxi, -lectum, *neglect, slight, disregard; overlook, be indifferent to.*

negô, âre, âvi, âtum, *deny, say, not; refuse.*

negôtior, âri, âtus sum, *do business, carry on business.*

negôtium, **î**, n., *business, enterprise; task, trouble, difficulty; dare negotium, instruct.*

Nemetes, um, m. plur., *the Nemetes*, a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmô (**nēminis**), m., gen. and abl. *not in use, no one, nobody.*

nēquâquam, adv., *by no means.*

neque, or sometimes **nec** before consonants, adv. and conj., *and not, nor; when repeated, neither, nor.*

nēquidquam or **nēquidquam**, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*

Nerviûs, a, um, *of or with the Nervii.*

Nerviûs, a, um, *Nervian, of the Nervii.*

Nerviî, ôrum, m. plur., *the Nervii*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

nervus, **î**, m., *sinew; strength, vigor, power.*

neu, see **neve**.

neuter, tra, trum, *neither; in plur., neither side.*

nêve or **neu**, or *not, and that not, and not to, nor.*

nex, neels, f., *death.*

nihil, *n.* indecl. *nothing*; acc. as adv., *not at all*.

nihilum, *ī*, *n.*, *nothing*; **nihilō**, abl. as adv., *none, no, w. comparatives*.

nimis, adv., *too*.

nimius, *a, um*, *excessive, too great*.

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except*.

Nitiobroges, *um, m. plur.*, *the Nitiobroges*, a tribe on the Garonne.

nitor, *ī*, *nīsus* and *nīxus sum*, *rely on, w. abl.*; *strive, endeavor*.

nix, *nivis*, *f.*, *snow*.

nobilis, *e*, *noble, of high birth*; *well-known*; *m.* as subst., *a noble*.

nōbilitās, *-tātis*, *f.*, *high birth*; *the nobility, the nobles*.

nocēō, *ēre, nī, itum*, *harm, injure, do harm to, molest, w. dat.*; part. *nocēns, -entis*, *guilty*.

noctū, abl. as adv., *by night*.

nocturnus, *a, um*, *by night, in the night, nightly*.

nōdus, *ī*, *m.*, *joint*.

nōlō, *nōlle*, *nōlūī*, *be unwilling, not wish*; in imperative, *do not*.

nōmen, *-mīnis*, *n.*, *name*; *reputation, prestige*; in abl., *under the name or pretence of, as, on account*.

nōminātim, adv., *by name*.

nōminō, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *name, call, mention*.

nōn, adv., *not, no*.

nōnāgintā, *ninety*.

nōndum, adv., *not yet*.

nōnnihil, adv., *somewhat*.

nōnnūllus, *a, um*, *some*.

nōnunquam, adv., *sometimes*.

nōnus, *a, um*, *ninth*.

Nōrēia, *ae, f.*, *chief town of the Norici*.

Nōricus, *a, um*, *Norican, of the Norici*, a tribe living inland north of the Adriatic.

nōs, plur. of *ego*.

nōscō, *ere, nōvī, nōtum*, *learn, become acquainted with*; in perf., *know*; part. *nōtus, a, um*, *known, well-known, familiar*.

noster, *tra, trum*, *our*; *m. plur.* as subst., *our men, troops or forces*.

nōtitia, *ae, f.*, *knowledge, acquaintance with*.

novem, *nine*.

Noviodūnum, *ī*, *n.*, (1) a town of the Suessiones; (2) a town of the Aedui; (3) a town of the Bituriges.

novitās, *-tātis*, *f.*, *novelty, strangeness*.

novus, *a, um*, *new, fresh*; in superlative, *latest, last, rear*; **novae res**, *political change, change of government, revolution*.

nox, *noctis*, *f.*, *night*.

noxa, *ae, f.*, *crime, offense*.

nūbō, *ere, nūpsī, nūptum*, *marry*.

nūdō, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *bare, expose*; *strip, clear*.

nūdus, *a, um*, *uncovered, naked, unprotected, bare*.

nūllus, *a, um, no, none*; in gen. dat. and abl. supplies cases of **nemo**, *no one*.

num, interrogative particle expecting negative answer, *not translated*.

nūmen, *-mīnis*, *n.*, *divinity, divine power*.

numerus, *ī*, *m.*, *number*; *amount*; *account*; in **numero**, *in the light, as*.

Numida, *ae, m.*, *Numidian*, from the north coast of Africa.

nummus, *ī*, *m.*, *coin, money*.

numquam, adv., *never*.

nunc, adv., *now*.

nunquam, adv., *never*.

nūntiō, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *announce, report, bring word, tell*.

nūntius, *ī*, *m.*, *messenger*; *news, report, message, tidings*.

nūper, adv., *lately, recently*.

nusquam, adv., *nowhere*.

nūtus, ūs, m., *nod, beck; gestures, signs.*

O.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, because of, for; quam ob rem, why.*

obacratūs, a, um, *indebted; m. as subst., debtor.*

ob-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *throw out, carry.*

ob-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *attend to.*

obitus, ūs, m., *destruction.*

ob-jleīō, ere, -jleī, -jectum, *place in the way, throw up, set, oppose; expose; pass, lie opposite, be in the way.*

oblātus, a, um, *from offero.*

oblīquē, adv., *obliquely.*

oblīquus, a, um, *slanting, oblique.*

ob-līviscor, ī, -lītus sum, *forget, w. gen.*

obsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *entreat, beseech.*

obsequentia, ae, f., *compliance, regard.*

obseruo, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep, observe, regard, follow; watch, note.*

ob-ses, -sidis, m., *hostage.*

obsessiō, -ōnis, f., *siege, blockade.*

ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *besiege, blockade, beset.*

obsidlō, -ōnis, f., *siege, blockade; pressure.*

obsignō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seal.*

ob-sistō, ere, -stītī, resist, with-stand, w. dat.

obstinātē, adv., *steadily, firmly, persistently.*

ob-strīngō, ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *bind, put under obligation.*

ob-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *barricade, close.*

obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *submit to, obey, w. dat.*

obtestor, āri, ātus sum, *implore, call upon.*

ob-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, *hold, possess, occupy, maintain.*

obtuli, from offero.

ob-veniō, ire, -vēnī, -ventum, *fall to, be assigned to; encounter.*

obviam, adv., *in the way, to meet, w. dat.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *opportunity, time; surprise.*

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting; solis occasus, sunset, the west.*

oc-cidō, ere, -eidī, -cāsum, *set; fall, be slain.*

oc-cidō, ere, -eidī, -cīsum, *slay, kill.*

occultātiō, -ōnis, f., *concealment.*

occultē, adv., *secretly.*

occultō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hide, conceal.*

occultus, a, um, *concealed, hidden, secret; in or ex occulto, in secret.*

occupātiō, -ōnis, f., *engagement, occupation.*

occupō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seize, get possession of; occupy, engage; cover.*

oc-curro, ere, -curri(-cucurri), -cursum, *fall in with, meet, come upon, find; resist; provide for; occur.*

occursō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rush upon, charge.*

Oceanus, ī, m., *(often with mare), the Ocean.*

Oecum, ī, n., *a town on the eastern side of the Alps.*

ocēus, adv., *quickly, swiftly.*

octāvus, a, um, *eighth.*

octingenti, ae, a, *eight hundred.*

octo, eight.

octōdecim, eighteen.

Octodurus, ī, m., *a town of the Veragri, in the Alps.*

octōgintā, eighty.

octōni, ae, a, *eight at a time, eight each, eight.*

oculus, ī, m., *eye.*

odī, isse, perf. w. pres. meaning,
hate.

odium, ī, n., *hatred.*

of-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēsum,
hurt, wound; cause harm or mis-
hap.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *wounding, hurt-*
ing.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum,
present, offer, hold out, give, afford,
render; put in one's way or power.

officiū, ī, n., *service, duty, alle-*
giance.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, m., *a king of the*
Nitobroges.

o-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum,
neglect, give up, leave; throw
away.

omnīnō, adv., *altogether, in all;*
w. negatives, at all; w. numerals,
only.

omnis, e, all, every, whole.

onerārius, a, um, for burdens;
navis oneraria, a transport.

onerō, āre, āvī, ātum, load.

on-us, -eris, n., *burden, weight,*
bulk; cargo, freight.

opera, ae, f., *work, exertion; pains,*
attention; services, aid, agency;
operam dare, take pains, see to
it.

opīniō, -ōnis, f., *opinion, impres-*
sion, idea; expectation, anticipa-
tion; reputation.

oportet, ēre, oportuit, *impersonal verb, it behoves, it is neces-*
sary; render freely by ought.

oppidānus, a, um, of a town * m.
plur. as subst., townspeople.

oppidum, ī, n., *town.*

op-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum,
oppose; pass., lie in the way.

opportūnē, opportunely, con-
veniently.

opportūnitās, -tātis, f., *fitness;*
convenience, suitable or favorable
nature, convenient opportunity,
advantage.

opportūnus, a, um, opportune,
convenient, advantageous.

op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pres-
sum, overwhelm, crush, surprise;
burden, weigh down.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., *assault,*
attack; mode of attack.

oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, at-
tack, assault, storm.

(ops), opis, f., *help, aid; in plur.,*
resources, power, strength.

optimē, adv., *superlative of bene,*
well, excellently.

optimus, a, um, superlative of
bonus, best, very good, most ex-
cellent.

optō, āre, āvī, ātum, desire;
perf. part. as adj., optātus, a,
um, desirable, acceptable.

op-us, -eris, n., *work, fortifica-*
tion, fortifying, structure; trade,
handicraft; opere w. munitus,
by art; quanto opere, how
much, how greatly, as much as;
tanto opere, so much, so earn-
estly, so vigorously; magno
opere, see magnopere.

opus, n. indecl., *need, necessity;*
opus est, it is necessary, there is
need.

ōra, ae, f., *shore, coast.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, address,*
words, statement, appeal.

ōrātor, -tōris, m., *ambassador.*

orbis, is, f., *circle; orbis terra-*
rum, the whole world.

Oreynia, ae, f., *a name given by*
Greek writers to the Hercynian
forest.

ōr-dō, -dinis, m., *rank, row,*
course, tier; grade, class; ar-
rangement, order.

Orgetor-ix, -igis, m., *a leading*
man of the Helvetii.

orior, īrī, ortus sum, rise, arise,
spring, be born; spring up, begin,
start; part. oriēns, -entis, as
adj., rising; oriens sol, sunrise,
the east.

ornāmentum, ī, n., *ornament,*
honor.

ornō, āre, āvī, ātum, adorn, dis-
tinguish; supply, equip, furnish.

ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, pray, beg, entreat.

ortus, a, um, from orior.

ortus, ūs, m., rising.

ōs, ōris, n., face, mouth.

Osismī, ōrum, m. plur., the Osismi, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, show, point out, explain, declare, state; reveal, unmask, display.

ostentātiō, -ōnis, f., show, display; boastfulness, pride; pretence, deception.

ostentō, āre, āvī, ātum, show, display, exhibit, parade.

ōtium, ī, n., rest, leisure, quiet.

ōvum, ī, n., egg.

P.

P., an abbreviation for Publius.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, f., foraging.

pābulātor, -tōris, m., forager.

pābulor, ārī, ātus sum, forage.

pābulum, ī, n., fodder, forage.

pācō, āre, āvī, ātum, subdue, reduce; part. pācatus, a, um, as adj., peaceful, quiet.

paetum, ī, n., manner, way; quo pacto, how.

Padus, ī, m., the Po, a river in Cisalpine Gaul (northern Italy).

Paemānī, ōrum, m. plur., the Paemani, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.

paene, adv., almost.

paenit-et, ēre, -nit, impersonal. w. acc. of person and gen. of thing, render by be sorry, regret.

pāgus, ī, m., district, canton.

palam, adv., openly, publicly.

palma, ae, f., palm, hand.

pal-ūs, -udis, f., marsh, swamp, fen.

palūster, tris, tre, marshy.

pandō, ere, pandī, passum, spread out, outstretch; in pass. w. capillus, be dishevelled.

pār, parīs, equal, like, the same; a match.

parcē, adv., sparingly.

parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum or parcitum, spare, w. dat.; be economical.

parēns, -entis, m. and f., parent.

parentō, āre, āvī, ātum, avenge, w. dat.

pareō, ēre, nī, itum, obey, submit, w. dat.

pariō, ere, peperī, partum, get, acquire, secure, win.

Parisīī, ōrum, m. plur., the Parisii, a tribe in northern Gaul on the Seine.

parō, āre, āvī, ātum, prepare, get ready, arrange; procure, get, acquire; part. parātus, a, um, as adj., ready, prepared.

pars, partis, f., part, portion, share; quarter, direction, side; party; way, point, respect.

partim, adv., partly; when repeated, often rendered by some... others.

partior, īrī, itus sum, divide.

partus, a, um, from pario.

parum, adv., (minus, mininē), little, too little, not much.

parvulus, a, um, very small, slight, trifling, insignificant; ab

parvulis, from early childhood.

parvus, a, um, (minor, minimus, small, trifling.

passim, adv., in all directions.

passus, a, um, from pando or from patlor.

passus, ūs, m., pace (five feet; one thousand paces make one mile.

pate-ficiō, ere, -feci, -factum, open, throw open.

pate-flō, -fieri, -factus sum, pass. of patefacio.

pateō, ēre, nī, extend, spread out; be open, stand open; part. patēns, -entis, as adj., open, exposed.

pater, -tris, m., father; in plur., forefathers, ancestors.

patienter, adv., patiently.

- patientia**, ac, f., *endurance, patience, forbearance.*
- patior**, ī, *passus sum*, *suffer, allow, permit; bear, endure, withstand.*
- patrus**, a, um, *of one's fathers, ancestral.*
- patrōnus**, ī, m., *patron, lord.*
- patruus**, ī, m., *uncle (on father's side).*
- pauci**, ac, a (sing. not in Caesar), *few, but few.*
- paucitas**, -tatis, f., *small number.*
- paulatim**, adv., *gradually, by degrees; gently.*
- paulisper**, adv., *for a short time.*
- paulo**, adv., *a little, slightly, somewhat.*
- paululum**, adv., *very slightly, a very little.*
- paulum**, adv., *a little.*
- pāx**, pācis, f., *peace.*
- peccō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *do wrong, commit a wrong.*
- pect-us**, -oris, n., *breast.*
- pecūnia**, ac, f., *money.*
- pec-us**, -oris, n., *cattle; flesh, meat.*
- pedālis**, e, *measuring a foot, a foot thick.*
- ped-es**, -itis, m., *foot-soldier; in plur., infantry.*
- pedester**, tris, tre, *on foot, on or by land; of infantry.*
- peditātus**, ūs, m., *infantry.*
- Pedius**, ī, m., *Quintus Pedius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- pējor**, pējus, *(comparative of malus), worse.*
- pellis**, is, f., *skin, hide; sub pellibus, in tents.*
- pellō**, ere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive, dislodge, repulse, defeat, rout.*
- pendō**, ere, pependī, pēnsūm, *weigh; pay.*
- penes**, prep. w. acc., *in the power or hands of.*
- penitus**, adv., *completely, utterly.*
- per**, prep. w. acc., *through; by means of, by; by way of, over, along; by reason of; per se, by or in one's self, so far as (he was) concerned.*
- per-agō**, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *finish, bring to an end.*
- perangustus**, a, um, *very narrow.*
- per-cipio**, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *get, acquire; hear, hear of, learn; gain, reap.*
- percontatiō**, -ōnis, f., *inquiry.*
- per-curro**, ere, -curri (-eueri), -cursum, *run along.*
- per-entio**, ere, -cussī, -cussum, *hit, strike down.*
- per-discō**, ere, -didici, *learn thoroughly, master.*
- per-dō**, ere, -didī, -ditum, *ruin; part. perditus, a, um, as adj., abandoned, desperate.*
- per-ducō**, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *carry or bring over, bring; prolong; carry, make.*
- perendinus**, a, um, *after to-morrow.*
- per-eō**, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum, *perish, be killed.*
- perequito**, āre, āvī, ātum, *ride through, ride about.*
- perexiguus**, a, um, *very small.*
- perfacilis**, e, *very easy.*
- per-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *endure, bear, submit to; carry, convey, report.*
- per-ficiō**, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *carry out, finish, accomplish, bring about; build, make.*
- perfidia**, ac, f., *faithlessness, treachery.*
- per-fringō**, ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *break through.*
- perfuga**, ac, m., *deserter.*
- per-fugio**, ere, -fūgī, *flee, escape; desert.*
- perfugium**, ī, n., *refuge, place of refuge.*
- per-gō**, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *proceed, advance.*

periclitor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *run risk, be exposed to danger; try, make a test.*

periculōsus, **a, um**, *dangerous.*

periculum, **ī**, **n.**, *danger, risk; test, trial, attempt.*

peritus, **a, um**, *skilled, experienced, familiar, w. gen.*

perlātus, **a, um**, *from perfero.*

per-legō, **ere**, **-lēgī**, **-lēctum**, *read through.*

per-luō, **ere**, **-luī**, **-lūtum**, *wash; in pass., bathe.*

permāgnus, **a, um**, *very large.*

per-maneō, **ēre**, **-mānsī**, **-mānsum**, *continue, remain, persist, abide.*

per-misceō, **ēre**, **-miscuī**, **-mixtum** (-mistum), *mix, mingle.*

per-mittō, **ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, *give up, yield, entrust, leave; allow, grant permission, permit.*

per-moveō, **ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtum**, *move, influence, induce; arouse, alarm, excite.*

per-mulceō, **ēre**, **-mulsī**, **-mulsum**, *soothe, calm, quiet.*

perniciēs, **ēī**, **f.**, *destruction.*

perpaucī, **ae, a**, *very few.*

perpendiculum, **ī**, **n.**, *plumb-line.*

per-petior, **ī**, **-pessus sum**, *endure, suffer.*

perpetuus, **a, um**, *continuous, unbroken, solid; perpetual, lasting; whole, entire; incessant; in perpetuum, for ever; abl. as adv., perpetuo, for ever, constantly, uninterruptedly.*

per-quirō, **ere**, **-quisivī**, **-quistum**, *inquire into or about.*

per-rumpō, **ere**, **-rūpī**, **-rūptum**, *break through, break, force a way or passage or entrance.*

per-scribō, **ere**, **-scripsi**, **-scriptum**, *write out, report, describe fully.*

per-sequor, **ī**, **-secentus sum**, *pursue, follow up; avenge; attack.*

persevērō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *per-*

solvō, **ere**, **-solvi**, **-solutum**, *pay.*

per-spiciō, **ere**, **-spexī**, **-spec-tum**, *see, see through; perceive, understand; observe, examine, inspect, survey; learn, ascertain, find out, become acquainted with.*

per-stō, **āre**, **-stīti**, **-stātum**, *persist, abide, be firm.*

per-suādeō, **ēre**, **-suāsī**, **-suāsum**, *persuade, induce, prevail on, convince, w. dat.*

per-terreō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itum**, *terrify, frighten, alarm; in pass., be panic-stricken; dismay, demoralize.*

per-timēscō, **ere**, **-timuī**, *fear greatly, be much afraid.*

pertinācia, **ae, f.**, *obstinacy.*

per-tineō, **ēre**, **-tinnī**, **-tentum**, *extend, reach, stretch; lead, tend, have a tendency; concern, relate, belong to.*

pertulī, *from perfero.*

perturbātiō, **-ōnis**, **f.**, *alarm, confusion, panic.*

perturbō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *throw into confusion, disconcert, disturb, alarm; in pass., be at a loss.*

pervagor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *roam about.*

per-veniō, **īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**, *come, reach, arrive.*

pēs, **pedis**, **m.**, *foot; pedibus, on foot, by land; pedem referre, to fall back, retire, retreat.*

pet-ō, **ere**, **-ivi**, **-itum**, *ask, request; seek, ask for, beg, sue for; make for, aim at, attack.*

Petrocoriī, **ōrum**, **m. plur.**, *the Petrocori, a tribe in south-western Gaul on the Garonne.*

Petrōnius, **ī**, **m.**, *Marcus Petronius, a centurion in Caesar's army.*

Petrosidius, **ī**, **m.**, *Lucius Petrosidius, the standard-bearer of one of Caesar's legions.*

phal-anx, **-angis**, **f.**, *phalanx, column, compact body.*

Pictōnes, **um**, **m. plur.**, *the Pictōnes, a Gallic tribe at the mouth of the Loire.*

- pietās, -tātis, f.**, *duty or devotion (to country), patriotism.*
- pilum, ī, n.**, *javelin, spear.*
- pilus, ī, m.**, *a maniple or division of a Roman legion; the senior centurion of the first maniple was chief centurion of the legion.*
- pinna, ae, f.**, *parapet, battlement.*
- Pirustae, ārum, m. plur.**, *the Pirustae, a tribe in Illyricum.*
- piscis, is, m.**, *fish.*
- Pisō, -ōnis, m.**, 1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso, a Roman legatus, slain by the Tigurini, B.C. 107; 2. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, grandson of the above, consul B.C. 58, and Caesar's father-in-law; 3. Marcus Piso, consul B.C. 61; 4. an Aquitanian of rank.*
- pix, picis, f.**, *pitch.*
- placeō, ēre, uī, itum, please, w. dat.; placet, impersonal, it is decided, (one) resolves.**
- placidē, adv.**, *calmly, quietly.*
- placō, āre, āvī, ātum, appease.**
- Plancus, ī, m.**, *Lucius Mummius Plancus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
- plānē, adv.**, *clearly; quite, altogether.*
- plāniciēs, ēī, f.**, *plain, level ground.*
- plānus, a, um, level, flat.**
- plēbēs, or plēbs, plēbis, f.**, *the common people.*
- plēnē, adv.**, *entirely, completely.*
- plēnus, a, um, full, complete.**
- plērīque, plēraque, plēraque, the most, the majority, the greater number.**
- plērumque, adv.**, *generally, usually, in most cases.*
- Pleumoxii, ōrum, m. plur.**, *the Pleumoxii, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*
- plumbum, ī, n.**, *lead; plumbum album, tin.*
- plūrimum, adv.**, *most, very much.*
- plūrimus, a, um, superlative of multus, most, very much, very many.**
- plūs, plūris, comparative of multus, more; in plur., several, many.**
- pluteus, ī, m.**, *screen, moveable breastwork, defence.*
- pōculum, ī, n.**, *drinking-cup.*
- poena, ae, f.**, *penalty, punishment; satisfaction.*
- poenitet, see paenitet.**
- poll-ex, -icis, m.**, *thumb.*
- polliceor, ērī, itus sum, promise, make a promise.**
- pollicitatiō, -ōnis, f.**, *promise, offer.*
- Pompēius, ī, m.**, *Pompey, 1. Cneius Pompeius, consul B.C. 55, proconsul of Spain B.C. 54-50. 2. Cneius Pompeius, an interpreter with the Roman army.*
- pond-us, -eris, n.**, *weight.*
- pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, place, set, station; w. eastrā, pitch; rest, base, make dependent; lay down; in pass., be situated, be dependent.**
- pōns, pontis, m.**, *bridge.*
- poposeī, from poseo.**
- populātiō, -ōnis, f.**, *ravaging, raid.*
- populor, ārī, ātus sum, ravage, lay waste, devastate.**
- populus, ī, m.**, *people, nation.*
- por-rigō, ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, stretch forward; part. porrēctus, a, um, as adj., extended.**
- porrō, adv.**, *further, moreover.*
- porta, ae, f.**, *gate.*
- portō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry, bring, convey.**
- portōrium, ī, n.**, *customs duty, toll, tax.*
- portus, ūs, m.**, *harbor, port.*
- poseō, ere, poposeī, ask for, demand.**
- positus, a, um, from pono.**
- possessiō, -ōnis, f.**, *possession, occupation; in plur. lands.*
- pos-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, possess, hold.**
- pos-sidō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, seize, occupy.**

possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can, be possible; be powerful or strong, have weight or influence.*

post, 1. *adv., afterwards, after;* 2. *prep. w. acc., after, behind.*

postea, *adv., afterwards; hereafter.*

posteaquam, *conj., after, when.*

posterus, a, um, *next, following; m. plur. as subst., descendants, posterity.*

post-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *postpone, set aside, disregard.*

postquam, *conj., after, when.*

postrēmō, *adv., finally, lastly, at last.*

postrīdiē, *adv., the next day, on the morrow.*

postulātum, ī, n., *demand.*

postulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask, ask for, demand, require.*

potēs, entis, *partic. of possum, powerful, influential.*

potentātus, ūs, m., *supremacy, chief power, leading position.*

potentia, ae, f., *power.*

potestās, -tātis, f., *power, control; opportunity, chance, permission.*

potior, iri, itus sum, *get control or possession of, gain, obtain, w. abl. or gen.*

potius, *comparative adv., rather, sooner, more.*

potuī, *from possum.*

prae, *prep. w. abl., in comparison with; on account of, for.*

praeacutus, a, um, *sharpened at the end, pointed.*

praebeō, ēre, uī, itum, *furnish, afford, give, cause.*

prae-caveō, ēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *take precautions, be on one's guard.*

prae-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *excel, surpass.*

prae-ceps, -cipitis, *headlong; abrupt, steep.*

praeceptum, ī, n., *order, instructions, injunction.*

prae-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -cep-tum, *order, instruct, give instructions; anticipate.*

praecepitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fling, hurl.*

praecepitō, *adv., especially.*

praecepiuus, a, um, *special, particular.*

prae-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *close, barricade.*

praeceō, -ōnis, m., *herald.*

Præcōnīnus, ī, m., *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

prae-currō, ere, -curri (-eucurri, -eurrum), *hasten on before; anticipate.*

praeda, ae, f., *plunder, booty.*

praedicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, declare, assert, boast.*

praedor, āri, ātus sum, *plunder, get plunder, pillage.*

prae-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, *construct in front, carry out.*

praeffectus, a, um, *from prae-ficio.*

praeffectus, ī, m., *officer, commander (especially of cavalry), prefect.*

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *place before, prefer, esteem more highly; se praeferre, to surpass, outdo.*

prae-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *put or set over, place in command of, give charge of, w. acc. and dat.*

prae-figō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, *fix before, place at the edge.*

praemet-nō, ere, -uī, be anxious, fear.

prae-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -mis-sum, *send in advance, send on before, send forward.*

praemium, ī, n., *reward, prize.*

praeoccupō, āre, āvī, ātum, *seize beforehand, seize, take possession of.*

praeceptō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prefer.*

prae-parō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare or get ready beforehand.*

prae-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place or set over, put in command of, w. acc. and dat.*

prae-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break off, snap; part. praeruptus, a, um, as adj., abrupt, precipitous.*

prae-saepiō, ire, -saepī, -saepitum, *block up, barricade.*

prae-scribō, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *prescribe, direct, dictate.*

praescriptum, i, n., *bidding, dictation.*

praesēns, -entis, partic. of praesum, *present, instant, in person.*

praesentia, ae, f., *the present; presence; in praesentia, for the moment, at the time.*

prae-sentiō, ire, -sēnsi, -sēnsum, *learn of or find out beforehand, have foresight.*

praesertim, adv., *especially, particularly.*

praesidium, i, n., *guard, garrison, (protecting) force; protection, support, escort.*

praestō, adv., *at hand; praesto esse, to meet.*

prae-stō, āre, -stitī, -stitum or -stātum, *exhibit, show, display; discharge, do; excel, be superior, w. dat.; praestat, impersonal, it is better.*

prae-sum, esse, -fuī, be over, be at head of, have command of; be in charge of, hold; w. dat.

praeter, prep. w. acc., *beyond, past; except, besides; contrary to.*

praetereā, adv., *besides, moreover.*

praeter-eō, -ire, -ii (-ivī), -itum, *pass over, pass by; part. as adj., praeteritus, a, um, past; n. plur. as subst., the past.*

praeter-mittō, ere, -misi, -misum, *let go by, let pass, lose; pass over, neglect.*

praeterquam, adv., *except.*

praetor, -tōris, m., *commander; praetor, a Roman magistrate.*

praetōris, a, um, *of a commander or praetor; praetoria cohors, body-guard.*

prae-ūrō, ere, -ūssi, -ūstum, *burn at the end or point.*

prae-vertō, ere, -verti, -versum, *anticipate, prevent, w. dat.*

prāvus, a, um, *poor, wretched; wicked, vicious, perverse.*

preces, um, f. (sing. defective and not found in Caesar), *prayers, entreaties.*

premō, ere, pressi, pressum, *press, press hard; crowd; harass, oppress.*

prendō, ere, prendī, prēnsūm, *seize, grasp.*

pretium, i, n., *price.*

(prex), preces, f., *see preces.*

pridiē, adv., *the day before, on the previous day.*

prīnipilus, i, m., *chief centurion; see pilus.*

prīmō, adv., *at first.*

primum, adv., *first, in the first place; eum or ubi primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible.*

prīmus, a, um, *superlative of prior, first, foremost, in the van; in primis, especially.*

prīn-ceps, -cipis, *first, chief, leading; m. as subst., leading man, leader, chief.*

prīncipātus, ūs, m., *leadership, chief position, first place, lead.*

prior, ius, *comparative, former, earlier; in front; first (of two).*

prīstinus, a, um, *former, previous; of former days, old-time.*

prīus, comparative adv., *earlier, sooner; prīus...quam, before, w. negatives until.*

prīusquam, conj., *before.*

privātim, adv., *privately, as individuals, as private persons.*

privātus, a, um, *private, individual, personal; m. as subst., a private person, individual.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of; on behalf of, for; instead of, in place of, as; in return for; in accordance with, according to; in proportion to, in comparison with; considering, in view of; as far as concerned.*

probō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prove; test, put to the test; approve of, favor, recognize, think highly of.*

prō-cēdō, ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *go forward, advance.*

Proculus, I, m., *Caius Valerius Proculus*, a Romanized Gaul of rank.

proclīnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bend forward; res proclinata, a falling cause.*

prōcōn-sul, -sulis, m., *proconsul*, an ex-consul in charge of a province.

procul, adv., *at a distance.*

prō-cumbō, ere, -cubui, *bend or slope forward, incline; lie down, fall, sink, lodge.*

prōcurō, āre, āvī, ātum, *attend to, have charge of.*

prō-currō, ere, -eucurri (-curri), -cursum, *run or rush forward, rush out, charge.*

prōd-eō, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itum, *go forth, come out, advance.*

prōdesse, from *prosum*.

prōditio, -ōnis, f., *treachery, treason.*

prōditor, -tōris, m., *traitor.*

prō-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, *give forth, publish, report; hand down, bequeath, transmit; betray.*

prō-ducō, ere, -dixi, -ductum, *lead forth or out, bring out; prolong, protract.*

proclior, āri, ātus sum, *fight.*

proclium, I, n., *battle, engagement, fighting, fight.*

profectio, -ōnis, f., *departure.*

profectus, a, um, from *proficiscor*.

prōfectus, a, um, from *proficio*.

prō-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *bring forth, bring out.*

prō-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *gain advantage, gain, effect; advance.*

pro-ficiscor, ī, -fectus sum, *set out, depart, start, go, proceed.*

pro-fiteor, ēri, -fessus sum, *declare, state openly, offer, profess, avow.*

prōfligō, āre, āvī, ātum, *roul, put to flight.*

prō-fluō, ere, -flūxi, *flow forth, rise.*

pro-fugiō, ere, -fūgi, -fugitum, *flee, escape.*

prōgnātus, a, um, *sprung, descended; m. as subst., descendant.*

prō-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *go forward, come forth, advance, proceed, go.*

prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum, *restrain, keep, prevent, hold, hinder, cut off; protect.*

proinde, adv., *therefore.*

prō-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw down or away, hurl, fling; abandon, renounce.*

prōlātus, a, um, from *profero*.

prōmineō, ere, nī, *lean forward.*

prōmiscuē, adv., *promiscuously, indiscriminately.*

prō-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let grow; part. prōmissus, a, um, as adj., long, flowing.*

prōmontōrium, ī, n., *headland, promontory.*

prō-moveō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *move forward, advance.*

prōmptus, a, um, *ready, alert.*

prōnē, adv., *bending forward*

prōnuntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *state publicly, declare, tell, announce; give notice, give orders, make proclamation.*

prope, adv. (*propius, proximē*), *near; nearly, almost; also as prep. w. acc., near.*

prō-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, *drive off, repel, dislodge, defeat.*

properō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten.*

propinquitās, -tātis, f., *neighborhood, vicinity, nearness, proximity; relationship, kinship.*

propinquus, a, um, *near, close; related; m. as subst., relative, kinsman.*

propior, ius, *comparative, nearer; see proximus.*

propius, adv., *see prope.*

prō-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place or set before; display; set forth, explain, state, disclose; offer, present; promise, propose.*

proprius, a, um, *one's own, private, particular; belonging to, peculiar to; n. as subst., a mark, a sign.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of, because of.*

propterea, adv., *on this account, for this reason; propterea quod, because.*

prōpugnātor, -tōris, m., *defender.*

prōpugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *defend, rush out to fight.*

prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *drive off, repel.*

prōra, ae, f., *prow, bow.*

prō-ruō, ere, -ruī, -rutum, *pull down, demolish.*

prō-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, *pursue, follow; accompany, escort; dismiss, address.*

prōspectus, ūs, m., *view, outlook, sight.*

prō-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *provide for, take precautions, take care.*

prō-sternō, ere, -strāvī, -strātum, *cast down, destroy.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *prove an advantage, be of service.*

prō-tegō, ere, -texī, -tectum, *cover, protect.*

prōterreo, ēre, nū, itum, *frighten away, drive off.*

prōtinus, adv., *at once, immediately.*

prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *drive off (in confusion), dislodge.*

prō-vehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry forward; in pass., be carried, be driven, sail.*

prō-veniō, īre, -vērī, -ventum, *grow up, come up, yield.*

prōventus, ūs, m., *outcome, issue, result.*

prō-vidēō, ēre, -vidī, -visum, *foresee, have foresight; provide for, secure, procure, make provision; take care, see, arrange.*

prōvincia, ae, f., *province; especially 'the province' of Gallia Transalpinga.*

prōvinciālis, e, *of the province.*

prōvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rush forth, rush out.*

proximē, adv., *superlative of prope, last, most recently, very lately.*

proximus, a, um, *nearest, next; last, recent; see propior.*

prudentia, ae, f., *foresight, prudence, discretion.*

Ptianiī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Ptianiī, a tribe of Aquitania.*

pūb-ēs, -eris, *adult, full-grown; m. as subst., adult, full-grown man.*

pūblicē, adv., *publicly, officially, in the name of the state, as a state.*

pūblicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *confiscate.*

pūblicus, a, um, *public, official, of the state or people; in publicum or in publico, in public; res publica, see respublica.*

Pūblins, ī, m., *Publius, a Roman praenomen.*

pudet, ēre, puduit, *it shames, w. acc. of person; render freely, (one) is ashamed.*

pudor, -ōris, m., *shame, sense of shame.*

puer, erī, m., *boy, child; a pueris, from childhood.*

puerilis, e, *of a child, of boyhood.*

pūgna, ae, f., *fight, fighting, battle.*

pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight; in pass., pugnātur, impersonally, the battle goes on, freely (they) fight.*

puleher, chra, chrum, beautiful, fine.

Pulio, -onis, m., Titus Pulio, a centurion in Caesar's army.

pulsus, a, um, from pello.

pulsus, us, m., stroke, propulsion.

puly-is, -eris, m., dust, cloud of dust.

puppis, is, f., stern.

purgo, âre, âvi, âtum, excuse, clear, free from blame.

puto, âre, âvi, âtum, think, believe, hold, consider, suppose.

Pyre-naeus, a, um, w. montes, the Pyrenees, between Gaul and Spain.

Q.

Q., an abbreviation for **Quintus**.

quâ, adv., where, at which point, by which road.

quadrâgênî, ac, a, forty each, forty.

quadrâgintâ, forty.

quadrîngentî, ac, a, four hundred.

quaerô, ere, quaesivî, quaesitum, ask, enquire, make enquiry; seek, look for.

quaestiô, -onis, f., investigation, enquiry, examination.

quaestor, -tôris, m., quaestor, the officer in charge of the finances of a province or army.

quaestus, ūs, m., gain, gaining, acquisition.

quâlis, e, of what sort, what.

quam, adv., how; w. comparatives, than; w. superlatives, as...as possible.

quandîu, adv., as long as.

quamobrem, adv., why, wherefore.

quamvis, adv., however.

quandô, adv., at any time, at times, ever.

quantus, a, um, how great, how much; as great as, as much as, as; **quanto...tanto**, by how much...by so much, the...the.

quan-tusvis, -tavis, -tunvis, however great, no matter how great.

quârê, adv., wherefore, why, for which, on account of which.

quartus, a, um, fourth

quasi, conj., as if.

quattuor or quatuor, four.

quattuordecim, fourteen.

-que, enclitic conjunction, and.

quemadmodum, adv., how, as.

queror, 1. questus sum, complain, complain of; lament, bewail.

quî, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what, that; he who; as coordinating relative, this, he; after **idem**, as.

quî, quae, quod, interrogative adj., what, which.

quî, qua, quod, indefinite adj. or rarely pron., some, any; anyone.

quicquam, from quisquam.

quicun-que, quaecun-que, quodcun-que, whocun-que, whatever, whichever.

quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, a certain one, a certain, one, a sort of.

quidem, adv., certainly, at least; **ne...quidem**, not even.

quî-ês, -êtis, f., rest.

quîêtus, a, um, quiet, at rest, settled, peaceable.

quî, conj., but that, that, so that not, as not; often best rendered by *from*, w. verbal in -ing.

quî, adv., nay, in fact.

quînam, quâenam, quodnam, who, which, what.

quînc-unx, -uncis, f., quincunx; in quincuncem, in the form of a quincunx.

quîndecim, fifteen.

quîngentî, ac, a, five hundred.

quîntî, ac, a, five each, five at a time, five.

quînguâgintâ, fifty.

quînque, five.

quintus, *a, um, fifth.*

Quintus, *i. m., Quintus, a Roman praenomen.*

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who, what*; *n. quid* as adv., *why.*

quis, qua, quid, indefinite pron., *any one, anything*; *n. quid* as adv., *in any respect, at all.*

quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam or **quidpiam**, *any one, any.*

quisquam, quidquam or **quicquam**, *any one, anything, any.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque**, *each, each one*; *w. superlatives* freely rendered by *all.*

quisquis (quaeque), quidquid or **quicquid**, *whoever, whatever.*

quivis, quaevis, quidvis or **quodvis**, *any one, any, any whatever.*

quō, abl. of **qui**, as conj., *that, in order that; because.*

quō, abl. of **qui**, as adv., *by how much, w. comparatives* *tho*; for **quo minus** see **quominus**.

quō, adv., 1. interrog., *whither, where.* 2. relative, *whither, where, to, at or into which.* 3. indefinite, *somewhere, anywhere.*

quoad, conj., *until, as long as.*

quod, conj., *because, that, in that; as for the fact that, as to, as for; the fact that; quod si, but if, if therefore.*

quominus or **quō minus**, conj., *so that not; freely rendered by from; w. recuso, to.*

quoniam, conj., *since, as, whereas.*

quoque, conj., *also, too, as well.*

quoqueversus (um), or **quōqueversus (um)**, adv., *in every direction.*

quot, indeclin., *how many.*

quotannis, adv., *yearly, every year.*

quotidianus, *a, um*, see **cotidianus**.

quotidiē, see **cotidie**.

quotiēs, adv., *how often; as often as.*

quum, conj., see **cum**.

R.

rād-ix, -icis, *m., root* (of tree); *spur, base, foot* (of mountain).

rā-dō, *ere, -si, -sum*, *share.*

rāmus, *i. m., branch, bough.*

rapiditās, -tātis, *f., swiftness.*

rapīna, *ae, f., plundering.*

rārus, a, um, *scattered, few, in detached groups, in small bodies.*

rāsus, a, um, from **rado**.

ratio, -ōnis, *f., calculation, account, list; method, system, plan, way; theory, science; regard, consideration, thought; reason.*

ratis, *is, f., raft.*

Raurici, -ōrum, *m. plur., the Raurici, a tribe on the Rhine near Switzerland.*

rebelliō, -ōnis, *f., renewal of war.*

Rebilus, i. m., Cuius Caninius Rebilus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

re-cēdō, *ere, -cēssī, -cēssum*, *withdraw, retire.*

recēns, -entis, *new, recent, late; fresh.*

re-cēseō, ēre, -cēnsaī, -cēnsūm, *muster, review.*

receptāculum, i. n., refuge, retreat.

receptus, ūs, m., retreat.

recēssus, ūs, m., retreat, opportunity to retreat.

re-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsūm, *fall back, recoil, befall.*

reciperō, āre, āvī, ātūm, *recover, regain.*

re-cipio, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *regain, get back; receive, admit; se recipere, (1) recover one's self, recover, (2) retreat, fall back, betake one's self, return.*

recitō, āre, āvī, ātūm, *read out*

reclinō, āre, āvī, ātūm, *make to lean; se reclinare, to lean; pass. part., reclinātus, leaning.*

rectē, adv., *properly, rightly.*

rēctus, a, um, *straight*.
recuperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *re-gain, recover*.
recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, *refuse, object to, decline, spurn, repudiate*.
rēda, ae, f., *wagon*.
redāctus, a, um, *from redigo*.
red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, *give back, return, restore, render, grant, pay*.
redemptus, a, um, *from redimo*.
red-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *go back, come back, return; decline; be reduced; depend on, be referred to*.
red-igō, ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *re-duce, render, make, bring*.
red-imō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, *buy, purchase, obtain; lease, farm*.
redintegrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *re-new, restore, revive*.
reditō, -ōnis, f., *return, returning*.
reditus, ūs, m., *return, returning*.
Redones, um, m. plur., *the Redones, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul*.
re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead back, bring back, move back*.
referō, referre, rettulī (or retulī), relatum, *bring back, carry back, bring; report, announce, tell; refer; pedem referre, retreat, fall back; gratiam referre, show gratitude, make return*.
re-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *re-pair; refresh, recruit*.
re-fringō, ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *break in, break open, break*.
re-fugio, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *retreat, flee back, escape*.
Rēginus, ī, m., *Caius Antistius Reginus, one of Caesar's lieutenants*.
regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, district, part, country; direction, line*.
rēginus, a, um, *royal*.
rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *rule, reign*.

rēgnum, ī, n., *royal power, sovereignty, kingdom*.
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule; direct, control, manage*.
re-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, *re-treat*.
re-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw or hurl back, drive back, throw aside; cast off, reject*.
re-linguēscō, ere, -langui, *be-come weak, lose energy*.
relātus, a, um, *from refero*.
relēgō, āre, āvī, ātum, *remove, banish*.
relictus, a, um, *from relinquo*.
religiō, -ōnis, f., *religious rite, observance or scruple; religion, religious matter; superstitious beliefs or fancies*.
re-linguō, ere, -līquī, -lictum, *leave, leave behind; abandon, give up; give; allow; in pass., remain*.
reliquus, a, um, *remaining, other, left, else, further, future; generally to be rendered by the rest of*.
re-mancō, ēre, -mānsī, -mān-sum, *remain, remain behind, stay*.
rēm-ex, -igis, m., *rower, oarsman*.
Rēmī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Remi, a tribe in northern Gaul*.
rēmigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *row*.
remigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *move back, return*.
reminscor, ī, *call to mind, remember*.
re-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send back, hurl back, give back; relax, weaken, give up, lose; part. remissus, a, um, as adj., mild, not severe*.
remollēscō, ere, *become weak or enervated*.
re-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *remove, send away; withdraw, draw away; part. as adj., remō-tus, a, um, distant, remote*.
remuneror, āri, ātus sum, *re-ward*.
Rēmus, ī, m., *a Roman, one of the Remi*.

rēmus, ī, m., *oar.*

renovō, āre, āvī, ātum, *renew.*

renūtiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *report, bring back word; declare elected.*

re-pellō, ere, reppulī (or **repulī**), **-pulsum,** *drive back, defeat; ab spe repellī, to be disappointed in a hope.*

repente, adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnus, a, um, *sudden, hasty; abl. repentīnō as adv., suddenly.*

re-periō, ere, repperī, -pertum, *find, find out, discover; originate.*

re-petō, ere, -petīvī, -petītum, *demand, demand back.*

repl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *amplify supply.*

reportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry back.*

reposcō, ere, *demand, require.*

repraesentō, āre, āvī, ātum, *do at once.*

repre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hēnsūm, *blame, censure, find fault with.*

re-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *check, stop.*

repudiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *reject.*

repugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *resist, defend one's self; be an obstacle.*

repulsus, a, um, *from repello.*

re-quirō, ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *require, demand; miss.*

rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, affair, circumstance, fact, object, interest, situation; the context will generally suggest a more exact rendering.*

resar-ciō, īre, -tum, *repair, make good.*

re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum, *break down, tear down, destroy.*

re-sciscō, ere, -scivī, -scitum, *learn, find out.*

re-scribō, ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *transfer, promote, enroll.*

reservō, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep back, reserve, keep.*

re-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, remain.

re-sidō, ere, -sēdī, settle down, become calm.

re-sistō, ere, -stitī, resist, withstand, hold one's ground, make resistance, w. dat.; part. resis-tēns, -entis, as adj., firm, steadfast.

re-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, *look back or behind; consider, have regard to.*

re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōsum, *answer, make answer, reply.*

respōsum, ī, n., *answer, reply.*

rēspūblica, reīpūblicae, f., *state, public affairs or interests; often written as two words.*

re-spuō, ere, -spuī, reject, spurn.

re-stinguō, ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, *extinguish.*

restit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *restore, replace, rebuild, re-establish, renew.*

re-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *detain, hold, restrain; keep, maintain, preserve; keep back.*

re-trahō, ere, -traxī, -trac-tum, *bring back (by force).*

re-vellō, ere, -velli, -vulsum, *tear or wrest away, pull up.*

rever-tō, ere, -tī, -sum (chiefly in perf. tenses), *return, come back; turn back.*

rever-tor, ī, -sus sum (chiefly in pres. tenses), *return, come back.*

re-vinciō, īre, -vinxī, -vinc-tum, *bind fast, fasten, make fast, brace.*

revocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *recall, call back; call away, entice.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

rhēnō, -ōnls, m., *reindeer.*

Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine.*

Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*

ripa, ae, f., *bank.*

rivus, ī, m., *brook, stream.*

rōb-ur, -oris, n., *oak.*

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask, ask for, request; w. sacramento, enlist.*

Rōma, ae, f., *Rome*.

Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman*; m. as subst., *a Roman*.

Roscius, i, m., *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rostrum, i, n., *beak*.

rota, ae, f., *wheel*.

rubus, i, m., *bramble*.

Rufus, i, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rūmor, -ōris, n., *rumor, report*.

rūpēs, is, f., *rock, cliff*.

rūrsus, adv., *again, back again, in turn*.

Rutēnī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Rutēni*, a tribe in southern Gaul.

Rutilus, i, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's officers.

S.

Sabīnus, i, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Sabis, is, m., *the Sabis*, now *Sambrē*, a river in north-eastern Gaul.

sacer-dōs, -dōtis, m., *priest*.

sacrāmentum, i, n., *military oath*.

sacrificium, i, n., *sacrifice*.

saepe, adv. (*saepius, saepis-simē*), *often*.

saepenumērō, adv., *often, frequently*.

saepēs, is, f., *hedge*.

saeviō, ire, īvi, itum, *rage, be violent*.

sagitta, ae, f., *arrow*.

sagittārius, i, m., *archer*.

sagulum, i, n., (*military*) *cloak*.

saltus, us, m., *defile, glen, pass*.

sal-ūs, -utis, f., *safety, welfare, protection*.

Samarobrīva, ae, f., a town of the Ambiani, in northern Gaul.

sauciō, ire, sauxī, sanctum, *make a solemn agreement, ratify, enact*; part. *sauctus*, a, um, as adj., *sacred, holy, inviolable*.

sangu-is, -inis, m., *blood*.

sānitas, -tātis, f., *sound mind, sober mind, good sense*.

sāuō, āre, āvi, ātum, *remedy, make good*.

Santonēs, um, or **Santonī**, orum, m. plur., *the Santonēs*, a tribe on the west coast of Gaul.

sānus, a, um, *sound, sane*; **pro sano**, *like a discreet man, sensibly, prudently*.

sap-iō, ere, -ivī, *be wise*.

sarcina, ae, f., in Caesar always in plur., *pack, (personal) baggage*.

sar-ciō, ire, -sī, -tum, *repair, make good*.

sarmentum, i, n., *fagot*.

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently; tolerably, quite, considerably*; often as subst., *enough, sufficient*.

satis-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, *do enough, do one's duty; make amends, satisfy, apologize*.

satisfactiō, -ōnis, f., *apology, excuse*.

sauciūs, a, um, *wounded*.

saxum, i, n., *stone, rock*.

scāla, ae, f., *ladder*.

Scaldis, is, m., *the Scaldis*, now *Scheldt*, a river in north-eastern Gaul.

scapha, ae, f., *skiff, small boat*.

scelerātus, a, um, *wicked, villainous*.

scel-us, -eris, n., *crime*.

sciēter, adv. (compar. *scientius*), *skillfully, cleverly*.

scientia, ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance*.

scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, *tear down, break down*.

scio, ire, īvi, itum, *know*.

scorpiō, -ōnis, m., *scorpion, a machine for hurling missiles*.

scribo, ere, scripsi, scriptum, *write, state*.

serobis, is, m., *ditch, trench*.

scutum, i, n., *shield*.

sēcūs, see *seculus*.

sec-ō, āre, -uī, -tum, cut, reap.
sēcrētō, adv., privately.
sectiō, -ōnis, f., booty.
sector, āri, ātus sum, pursue, follow after.
sectūra, ae, f., mine.
secundum, prep. w. acc., along, according to; besides; next to.
secundus, a, um, second; furor-able, successful, prosperous; secundo flumine, down stream.
seeūris, is, f., axe, borne by lictors as a symbol of authority.
seuus, adv. (compar. sēcūsus, other-wise; nihilo seēcūs, none the less.
seēcūsus, a, um, from sequor.
sed, conj., but.
sēdecim, sixteen.
sēdēs, is, f., seat, abode, settlement.
sēditiō, -ōnis, f., insurrection, rising, revolt.
sēditiosus, a, um, seditious.
Sedulius, ī, m., a leader of the Lemovices.
Sedūnī, ōrum, m. plur., the Seduni, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.
Sedusiī, ōrum, m. plur., the Sedusiī, a German tribe.
seg-es, -etis, f., crop; field of grain, corn field.
Sēgnī, ōrum, m. plur., the Segni, a German tribe in north-eastern Gaul.
Segontiaei, ōrum, m. plur., the Segontiaci, a tribe in Britain.
Segov-ax, -actis, m., a king ruling in Kent.
Segusiāvī, ōrum, m. plur., the Segusiavi, a tribe in central Gaul.
semel, adv., once; semel atque iterum, more than once.
sēmentis, is, f., sowing of grain.
sēmīta, ae, f., path, by-path.
semper, adv., always.
Semprōnius, ī, m., Marcus Sempronius Rudīlus, one of Caesar's officers.

senātor, -tōris, m., senator.
senātus, ūs, m., senate.
sen-ex, -is, m., old man.
sēnī, ae, a, six each, six.
Senones, um, m. plur., the Senones, a tribe in central Gaul on the Seine.
sententia, ae, f., opinion, view, idea; scheme, purpose; sentence, judgment.
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, feel, be aware, know, perceive, learn; think, have an idea, hold an opinion.
sentis, is, m., thorn, briar.
sēparātīm, adv., separately, by themselves, privately.
sēparō, āre, āvī, ātum, separate; part, as adj., sēparātus, a, um, separate.
septem, seven.
septentriō, -ōnis, m. (chiefly in plur.), the seven stars of the constellation of the Great Bear; hence the north.
septimus, a, um, seventh.
septingentī, ae, a, seven hundred.
septuāgintā, seventy.
sepultūra, ae, f., burial.
Sēquana, ae, f., the Sequana, now Seine, a river in northern Gaul.
Sēquanus, a, um, Sequanian, of the Sequani; m. as subst., a Sequanian, in plur., the Sequani, a tribe in Gaul north of the province.
sequor, ī, seēcūsus sum, follow, pursue; accompany, attend, attach one's self to; result, ensue.
sermō, -ōnis, m., conversation, intercourse, discussion.
serō, ere, sēvī, satum, sow.
sērō, adv., too late.
Sertōrius, ī, m., Quintus Sertorius, a Roman general, who in a time of civil war, held Spain from 80 to 72 B.C.
servilis, e, of slaves, slavish.
serviō, īre, ivī, itum, be a slave, follow blindly, devote one's self to.

servitūs, -tūtis, f., slavery, bondage, subjection.

Servius, I, m., a Roman praenomen.

servō, āre, āvī, ātum, keep, hold, maintain; watch, save, preserve.

servus, I, m., slave.

sescenti, ac, a, six hundred.

sēsē, for se, from sui.

sēsquipedālis, c, a foot and a half.

sen, see sive.

sevēritās, -tātis, f., strictness, severity, rigor.

sēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call aside.

sēvum, I, n., tallow.

sex, six.

sexāgintā, sixty.

sexcenti, ac, a, see sescenti.

Sextius, I, m., 1. Titus Sextius, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. **Publius Sextius Buculus,** a centurion in Caesar's army.

sī, conj., if, even if; whether, to see whether.

Sibzātes, nm, m. plur., the Sibzates, a tribe in Aquitania.

sic, adv., thus, in this way; so, in such a way; as follows.

siccitās, -tātis, f., drying up, dryness, drought.

sicubi, conj., if anywhere.

sicut, conj., just as, just like.

sicuti, conj., just as, just as if.

sīd-us, -eris, n., star, constellation, heavenly body.

signifer, erī, m., standard-bearer.

significātiō, -ōnis, f., signal, announcement, intimation.

significō, āre, āvī, ātum, indicate, announce, make known, intimate, show.

signum, I, n., signal; standard; **signa convertere,** to wheel about; **signa ferre** or **inferre,** to advance.

Sīlānus, I, m., Marcus Silanus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

silentium, I, n., silence; **abl. silentio** as adv., in silence, silently.

Silius, I, m., Titus Silius, one of Caesar's officers.

silva, ae, f., wood, forest.

silvestris, e, wooded.

similis, e, like, similar, w. dat. or gen.

similitū-dō, -dinis, f., resemblance, similarity.

simul, adv., at the same time; repeated, both, and; **simul atque** or sometimes **simul** alone, as soon as.

simulācrum, I, n., image, figure.

simulātiō, -ōnis, f., pretence, show, deceit, insincerity.

simulō, āre, āvī, ātum, pretend, feign.

simultās, -tātis, f., rivalry, feud. **sim, conj., but if.**

sincērē, adv., honestly, truthfully.

sine, prep. w. abl., without.

singillātīm, adv., singly, individually, one by one.

singulāris, e, single, one by one, by one's self; extraordinary, unparalleled, admirable, distinguished.

singuli, ae, a, one each, one at a time, one by one, singly, several, one.

sinister, tra, trum, left; fem. **sinistra** as subst., left hand (sc. manus).

sinistrōrsus, adv., to the left.

sinō, ere, sīvī, situm, allow, permit.

siquidem, conj., since.

situs, ūs, m., position, situation.

sive or **sen, conj.,** or if; repeated, **whether...or, either...or.**

socer, erī, m., father-in-law.

societās, -tātis, f., alliance.

socius, I, m., ally.

sōl, sōlis, m., sun; **oriens sol,** the east; **occidens sol,** the west.

sōlācium, I, n., consolation.

soldurius, I, m., an Aquitanian word for a retainer sworn to die with his leader.

soleō, ēre, solitus sum, be wont ;
often best rendered by *usually*.

solicitō, āre, see sollicito.

solitū-dō, -dinis, f., solitude, wilderness, desert.

sollertia, ae, f., skill, shrewdness, ability.

sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum, stir up, instigate, urge, tempt, try to bribe, try to win over.

sollicitū-dō, -dinis, f., anxiety.

solum, ī, n., soil, ground ; bottom.

solum, adv., only, alone.

solus, a, um, alone, only.

solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, loose ;
with or without *maves*, *weigh anchor, set sail*.

sonitus, ūs, m., sound, noise.

Sontiātes, um, m. plur., the Sontiātes, a tribe of Aquitania.

sonus, ī, m., sound.

soror, -ōris, f., sister.

sors, sortis, f., lot.

spatium, ī, n., space, extent ; distance, interval ; pause, time.

speciēs, eī, f., appearance, form ; show, semblance.

spectō, āre, āvī, ātum, look, face, slope, lie ; look at, consider, regard.

speculātor, -tōris, m., spy.

speculātorius, a, um, of a spy, for spying, reconnoitring.

speculor, ārī, ātus sum, spy, act as spy.

spērō, āre, āvī, ātum, hope ; hope for, expect.

spēs, eī, f., hope ; in spem venire, begin to have hope, entertain a hope.

spiritus, ūs, m., pride, airs.

spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, strip, deprive, despoil.

spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.), defective noun f. ; in abl., of one's own accord, by one's self.

stabiliō, ire, ivī, itum, make steady or firm.

stabilitās, -tātis, f., steadiness, firmness.

statim, adv., at once.

statiō, -ōnis, f., guard, sentry, outpost, picket.

stat-nō, ere, -nī, -ūtum, set up, fix ; decide, determine, resolve ; take measures, punish.

statūra, ae, f., stature, size.

status, ūs, m., position, condition, state.

stimulus, ī, m., goad, spur, prick.

stipendiārius, a, um, tributary ;
m. as subst., *a tributary, vassal*.

stipendium, ī, n., tribute.

stīp-es, -itis, m., stake, post.

stirps, stirpis, f., stock, race.

stō, āre, steti, statum, stand ; abide by.

strāmentum, ī, n., straw, thatch ; covering, saddle.

streptus, ūs, m., noise, din, clatter, confusion.

strūctūra, ae, f., gallery, mine.

studeō, ēre, nī, strive, be eager for, be bent upon ; be devoted to, pay attention to.

studiōsē, adv., eagerly, zealously.

studium, ī, n., eagerness, zeal, devotion, energy, enthusiasm ; pursuit.

stultitia, ae, f., folly.

sub, prep. (1) w. abl., under, beneath ; at the foot of, close by, near to ; (2) w. acc., under, close to ; of time, towards, just before.

subāctus, a, um, from subigo.

subdolus, a, um, crafty, cunning, deceitful.

sub-ducō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, draw off, lead off ; draw up, haul up, beach.

subductiō, -ōnis, f., hauling on shore, beaching.

sub-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, come up, approach ; enter ; under-go, submit to.

sub-fodiō, ere, -fōdī, -fossus, stab from beneath or in the belly.

sub-igo, ere, -ēgi, -āctum, force, compel, constrain.

subitō, adv., *suddenly*.

subitus, a, um, *sudden, hasty*.

sub-jiciō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, *throw from beneath; place below; bring under, subject, expose, force to submit; in pass., lie near, be subject*.

sublātus, a, um, *from tollo*.

sublevō, āre, āvi, ātum, *support, raise up; assist, relieve, help*.

subleca, ae, f., *pile, stake*.

sub-luō, ere, -lūtum, *wash*.

subministrō, āre, āvi, ātum, *supply, furnish*.

sub-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, *send (to aid), sent to one's aid*.

sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *remove, drive off, dislodge*.

sub-ruō, ere, -rui, -rutum, *dig under, dig out, undermine*.

sub-sequor, ī, -secutus sum, *follow (closely), follow up, succeed*.

subsidiū, ī, n., *aid, assistance; support; reserves, reinforcement*.

sub-sidō, ere, -sēdi, -sessum, *remain*.

sub-sistō, ere, -stiti, *halt, make a stand; hold*.

sub-sum, -esse, -fui, *be near, be close at hand*.

sub-trahō, ere, -traxi, -tractum, *remove, take away, withdraw*.

subvectiō, -ōnis, f., *transportation, conveyance*.

sub-vchō, ere, -vexi, -vectum, *bring up*.

sub-veniō, īre, -veni, -ventum, *come to the support of, come to help, aid*.

sue-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum, *succeed, take the place of, relieve, w. dat.; come close to; come up, advance; be successful*.

sue-cendō, ere, -cendi, -cēsum, *set on fire*.

suecēssus, ūs, m., *approach, advance*.

sue-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum, *cut down*.

sue-cumbō, ere, -cubi, -cubitum, *give way, succumb, give up under*.

sue-currō, ere, -curri, -cursum, *run to aid, run up*.

sudis, is, f., *stake*.

sudor, -ōris, m., *sweat; toil, exertion*.

Suebī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Suebi, a German tribe on the Rhine*.

Suessiōnes, um, m. plur., *the Suesiones, a tribe in northern Gaul*.

suf-ficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum, *be sufficient, hold out*.

suffragiū, ī, n., *vote*.

Sugambri, ōrum, m. plur., *the Sugambri, a German tribe on the Rhine*.

suggestus, ūs, m., *platform, tribune*.

sui, sibi, sē or sēsē, reflex. pron., *himself, itself, themselves; him, it, them; inter se (to, with, from, etc.) one another; per se, of or by one's self, as far as one is concerned*.

Sulla, ae, m., *a great Roman general and political leader, living from 138 to 78 B.C.*

Sulpicius, ī, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

sum, esse, fui, *be, exist; w. gen., belong to, be a part or mark of*.

summa, ae, f., *total, sum; chief part, main body; chief control, command, management, control*.

summus, a, um, *superlative of superus, highest, greatest, chief, supreme, very great, very high, extreme, most important, perfect, entire*.

sumō, ere, sumpsī, sumpsum, *take, assume; inflict; spend*.

sumptuosus, a, um, *costly*.

sumptus, ūs, m., *expense*.

superbē, adv., *haughtily, arrogantly, arbitrarily*.

superior, ius, comparative of superus, *higher, upper; former, previous; superior, more successful*.

superō, āre, āvī, ātum, conquer, defeat, overcome, be victorious, prevail; be superior, surpass, overtop; survive.

super-sedō, ēre, -sēdi, -ses-sum, abstain, refrain.

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, remain, survive.

suppet-ō, ere, -ivī, -itum, be at hand, be at one's service; hold out.

supplémentum, ī, n., reinforcements.

suppl-ex, -icis, suppliant.

supplicatiō, -ōnis, f., thanksgiving.

suppliciter, adv., as suppliants.

supplicium, ī, n., punishment, penalty.

supportō, āre, āvī, ātum, bring up.

suprā, adv. or prep. w. acc., above, before.

sus-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, undertake, take on one's self.

su-spicō, ere, -spexi, -spec-tum, suspect; in pass., be an object of suspicion.

suspiciō, -ōnis, f., suspicion.

suspikor, āri, ātus sum, suspect.

sustentō, āre, āvī, ātum, hold out, maintain one's self, sustain, bear up against.

sus-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, sustain, withstand, hold out, bear; check; hold up, rein in, endure, undertake.

sustulī, from *tollo*.

suus, a, um, his, her, its, their; his own, etc.; m. plur. as subst., **sui, ōrum**, his (their) friends, comrades, men, countrymen; n. plur. as subst., **sua, ōrum**, his (their) possessions, property.

T.

T., an abbreviation for **Titus**.

tabernaculum, ī, n., tent.

tabula, ae, f., list, document.

tabulātum, ī, n., story.

taceō, ēre, nī, itum, be silent, be silent about; part. as adj., **tacitus, a, um**, silent.

tālea, ae, f., bar, rod.

tālis, e, such, of such a sort.

tam, adv., so.

tamen, adv., still, however, yet; at least.

Tamesis, is, m., the Thames.

tametsī, conj., although.

tandem, adv., at least; in questions, pray.

tangō, ere, tetigi, tactum, touch, border on.

tantopere, adv., so much, so earnestly.

tantulus, a, um, so trifling, so small.

tantum, adv., only.

tantummodo, adv., only, merely.

tantundem, adv., just so far, just as much.

tantus, a, um, so great, so much, such; as great, as much; n. **tantum** as adv., so much, so far; **tanti**, locative, of such value.

Tarbelli, ōrum, m. plur., the Tarbelli, a tribe in Aquitania.

tardē, adv., slowly.

tardō, āre, āvī, ātum, retard, check, delay, hinder.

tardus, a, um, slow, inactive, dispirited.

Tarusātes, um, m. plur., the Tarusates, a tribe of Aquitania.

Tasgetius, ī, m., a man of high rank among the Carnutes.

taurus, ī, m., bull.

Taximagulus, ī, m., a king ruling in Kent.

taxus, ī, m., yew.

Tectosages, um, m. plur., the Tectosages, a branch of the Volcae, a Gallic tribe in the province, which had penetrated into Germany.

tectum, ī, n., roof, house.

tectus, a, um, from *tego*.

tegimentum, ī, n., covering.

- tegō, ere, texī, tectum, cover, hide, protect.**
- tēlum, ī, n., weapon, missile, dart.**
- temerārius, a, um, reckless, rash.**
- temerē, adv., rashly, hastily; without cause, without good reason.**
- temeritās, -tātis, f., recklessness, rashness, thoughtlessness.**
- tēmō, -ōnis, m., pole (of chariot).**
- temperantia, ae, f., moderation.**
- temperō, āre, āvī, ātum, control, restrain, refrain; part. as adj., temperatus, a, um, temperate, mild.**
- tempestās, -tātis, f., weather; storm.**
- temptō or tentō, āre, āvī, ātum, try; try to force, make an attempt on; tempt.**
- temp-us, -oris, n., time, season; occasion, crisis, emergency; reliquum tempus, the future.**
- Tenctērī, ōrum, m. plur., the Tencteri, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.**
- tendō, ere, tetendi, tēsum or tentum, stretch, stretch out; pitch a tent, encamp.**
- tenebrae, ārum, f. plur., darkness.**
- teneō, ere, uī, tentum, hold, have, keep, maintain; occupy, comprise; restrain, bind, detain.**
- tener, era, erum, tender, young.**
- tentō, see tempto.**
- tenuis, e, slight, trifling, insignificant; feeble, delicate.**
- tennitās, -tātis, f., feebleness, poverty.**
- tenuiter, adv., thinly, thin.**
- ter, adv., three times.**
- ter-es, -etis, round, rounded.**
- tergum, ī, n., back, rear; tergum vertere, to flee, take to flight.**
- ternī, ae, a, three at a time, three each, three.**
- terra, ae, f., earth, land; ground; country; in terris, in the world.**
- Terrasidius, ī, m., Titus Terrasidius, an officer with Caesar.**
- terrēnus, a, um, of earth.**
- terreō, ēre, nī, itum, frighten, alarm, terrify.**
- territō, āre, frighten, terrify.**
- terror, ōris, m., alarm, panic, terror.**
- tertius, a, um, third.**
- testāmentum, ī, n., will.**
- testimōnium, ī, n., proof, evidence, testimony.**
- testis, is, m., witness.**
- testū-dō, -dinis, f., testudo, shelter of overlapping shields; shelter, covered gallery.**
- Teutomatus, ī, m., king of the Nitiobroges.**
- Teutonī, ōrum, or Teutones, um, the Teutones, a German tribe that invaded Gaul about 110 B.C.**
- tignum, ī, n., beam.**
- Tigurīnus, a, um, Tigurine; m. plur. as subst., Tigurinī, ōrum, the Tigurini, one of the four divisions or cantons of the Helvetii.**
- timeō, ere, uī, fear, feel or have fear, be anxious, be afraid.**
- timidē, adv., timidly; non timide, fearlessly.**
- timidus, a, um, full of fear, frightened, cowardly.**
- timor, -ōris, m., fear, alarm, dread, panic, cowardice.**
- Titurinus, ī, m., Quintus Titurinus Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.**
- Titus, ī, m., Titus, a Roman praenomen.**
- tolerō, āre, āvī, ātum, bear, endure, hold out, sustain.**
- tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise; take away, remove, destroy, do away with, put an end to; in pass., be elated.**
- Tolōsa, ae, f., Toulouse, a city in the southern part of the province.**
- Tolōsātes, um, m. plur., the people of Toulouse.**
- tormentum, ī, n., torture; engine (for throwing missiles).**
- torreō, ēre, uī, tostum, scorch.**

tot, indeclinable, *so many*.

totidem, indeclinable, *as many, the same number*.

tôtus, a, um, *whole, entire, all*; often rendered freely by *entirely, altogether*.

trabs, trabis, f., *beam*.

trâ-dô, ere, -didi, -ditum, *hand over, give up, surrender; pass on; hand down; entrust, recommend; teach, impart*.

trâ-ducô, ere, -dûxî, -duetum, *lead across, bring over, lead; win over; transfer, promote*.

trâgula, ac, f., *javelin, lance*.

trahô, ere, traxî, tractum, *drag along, draw*.

trajectus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.

trâ-jiciô, ere, -jēcî, -jectum, *pierce, strike*.

trânô, âre, âvî, âtum, *swim across*.

tranquillitâs, -tâtis, f., *stillness, calm*.

trâns, prep. w. acc., *across, over, beyond, on the other side of*.

Trânsalpinus, a, um, *Transalpine, beyond the Alps (from Rome)*.

trân-scendô, ere, -scendi, -scensum, *climb over; cross over, board*.

trânsducô, see **trâducô**.

trâns-eô, -îre, -îi (-îvî), -itum, *cross, cross over, pass through, go or come over; migrate; pass, go by*.

trâns-ferô, -ferre, -tulî, -lâtum, *bring over, transfer*.

trâns-figô, ere, -fixî, -fixum, *pierce*.

trâns-fodiô, ere, -fodî, -fossu, *pierce through*.

trâns-gredior, i, -gressus sum, *step over or across; cross*.

trânsitus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.

trânsjiciô, see **trajicio**.

trânsmarînus, a, um, *beyond the sea, foreign*.

trânsmissus, ūs, m., *passage across*.

trâns-mittô, ere, -mîsî, -missum, *transport, take across*.

trânsportô, âre, âvî, âtum, *carry, lead, bring or take over*.

Trânsrhênânus, a, um, *living across the Rhine (from Gaul); m. plur. as subst., those across the Rhine*.

trânstrum, î, n., *cross-beam, thwart*.

trânversus, a, um, *cross, transverse, oblique*.

Trebius, î, m., *Marcus Trebius Gallus, one of Caesar's officers*.

Trebônîus, î, m., *Caius Trebonius, 1. one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a Roman knight*.

trecentî, ac, a, *three hundred*.

trepidô, âre, âvî, âtum, *hurry, be in a hurry, be in confusion, be alarmed*.

três, tria, *three*.

Trêverî, ôrum, m. plur., *the Treveri, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul, on the Rhine*.

Tribôes, um, or Tribocî, ôrum, *the Triboci, a German tribe on the Rhine*.

tribûnus, î, m., *tribune, (an officer in the Roman army)*.

trib-nô, ere, -uî, -ûtum, *grant, give, bestow, have regard, give credit, do for the sake of*.

tribûtum, î, n., *tribute, tax*.

triduum, i, n., *space of three days, three days*.

triennium, î, n., *three years*.

trigintâ, *thirty*.

trînî, ac, a, *three at a time, three, triple*.

Trinobantes, um, *the Trinobantes, a tribe in Britain*.

tripertitô, adv., *in three divisions*.

tripl-ex, -icis, *triple, threefold*.

triquetrus, a, um, *triangular*.

tristis, e, *sad, dejected*.

tristitia, ac, f., *sadness, dejection*.

truncus, *ī*, *m.*, *trunk*.

tū, *tuī*, *thou, you*.

tuba, *ae, f.*, *trumpet*.

tueor, *ēri, tūtus* (or *tuitus*) *sum*, *protect, guard, keep safe, maintain*.

Tulingi, ōrum, *m. plur.*, *the Tulingi, a German tribe near the Helvetians*.

Tullius, ī, *m.*, *Quintus Tullius Cicero, one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

Tullus, ī, *m.*, *Caius Volcatius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers*.

tum, *adv.*, *then, at that time; cum...tum, both...and, not only...but also*.

tumultuor, *ārī, ātus sum*, *make an uproar or noise*.

tumultuōsē, *adv.*, *noisily, with much disorder*.

tumultus, ūs, *m.*, *noise, uproar, commotion, disorder; uprising, rebellion*.

tumulus, ī, *m.*, *mound, rising ground*.

tunc, *adv.*, *then, at that juncture*.

turna, *ae, f.*, *squadron*.

Turones, um, or **Turonī, ōrum**, *m. plur.*, *the Turones, a tribe in north-western Gaul*.

turpis, e, *disgraceful, base*.

turpiter, *adv.*, *disgracefully, basely, shamefully*.

turpitū-dō, -dinis, f., *disgrace*.

turris, is, f., *tower*.

tūtus, a, um, *safe, secure; abl. as adv., tūtō (compar. tūtius), safely, in or with safety*.

tuus, a, um, *thy, your*.

U.

ubi, *adv.*, *where; when; ubi primum, as soon as*.

ubique, *adv.*, *wherever*.

Ubiī, ōrum, *m. plur.*, *the Ubii, a tribe in Germany on the Rhine*.

ubique, *adv.*, *anywhere*.

uleiscor, ī, ultus sum, *punish, avenge*.

ūllus, a, um, *any; as subst., any one*.

ulterior, ius, *comparative, further, more remote*.

ultimus, a, um, *superlative, furthest, most remote, last*.

ultrā, *prep. w. acc.*, *beyond*.

ultrō, *adv.*, *beyond; besides, even; of one's own accord, voluntarily, without provocation; ultro citroque, to and fro, hither and thither*.

ultus, a, um, *from uleiscor*.

ululātus, ūs, *m.*, *howling, yell*.

umerus, ī, *m.*, *shoulder*.

unquam, *adv.*, *ever*.

unā, *adv.*, *at the same time, together, along, jointly*.

unde, *adv.*, *whence, from which or whom*.

undecim, *eleven*.

undecimus, a, um, *eleventh*.

undique, *adv.*, *from all sides, on all sides*.

ūniversus, a, um, *all, the whole, entire, in a body; as subst., all together, the whole body*.

unquam, *adv.*, *ever*.

ūnus, a, um, *one, a single; alone, only; one and the same; ad unum, to a man*.

urbānus, a, um, *of or in the city (i.e. at Rome)*.

urbs, urbis, f., *city*.

urgeō, ēre, ursī, *press hard*.

ūrus, ī, *m.*, *bison, wild ox*.

Usipetes, um, *m. plur.*, *the Usipetes, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine*.

ūsitātus, a, um, *customary, common, familiar*.

usque, *adv.*, *quite up to, until, even, to such a degree*.

ūsus, a, um, *from utor*.

ûsus, ûs, m., *experience, use, employment, practice, management, enjoyment; advantage, service; need, necessity; ex usu, of advantage, advantageous; usu venire, to happen, turn out.*

ut, or uti, that, in order that, generally best rendered by *infin. w. to; w. verbs of fearing, that not; even if; as; when; seeing that, since; how.*

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both; m. plur., both sides.

utî, see ut.

ûtilis, e, useful, of use, serviceable.

ûtilitâs, -tâtis, f., advantage.

ûtor, î, ûsus sum, use, employ, make use of, adopt, show, display, practise, exercise, maintain, avail one's self of, enjoy, have, w. abl.

utrimque, adv., on both sides.

utrum, conj., whether.

uxor, -ôris, f., wife.

V.

Vacalus, î, m., a branch of the Rhine near its mouth.

vacatiô, -ônis, f., freedom, exemption.

vacô, âre, âvî, âtum, be unoccupied, lie waste.

vacuus, a, um, empty.

vadum, î, n., ford; shoul, shallow.

vâgîna, ae, f., scabbard.

vâgor, âri, âtus sum, wander, roam about.

valeô, êre, nî, be strong, be powerful, have weight or influence; avail, be effective.

Valerius, î, m., 1. *Cuius Valerius Flaccus, governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.; 2. Lucius Valerius Praeconius, a Roman lieutenant, slain in Aquitania about 78 B.C.; 3. Cuius Valerius Caburus, with his two sons Procillus and Donnotaurus, Gauls who became Roman citizens.*

Valetiacus, î, m., an Aeduan of rank.

valetû-dô, -dinis, f., health.

vallês or vallis, is, f., valley.

vallum, î, n., rampart, wall.

vallus, î, m., stake.

Vangiones, um, m. plur., the Vangiones, a German tribe on the Rhine.

varietâs, -tâtis, f., variety, diversity.

varius, a, um, various, diverse, different.

vastô, âre, âvî, âtum, lay waste, ravage.

vastus, a, um, vast, boundless, immense.

vâticinâtiô, -ônis, f., divination, prophecy.

vectîg-al, -âlis, n., tax, tribute; revenue.

vectigâlis, e, tributary.

vectôrius, a, um, for carrying;

vectorium navigium, a transport-ship.

vehementer, adv., severely, strongly, vigorously, desperately, exceedingly.

vehô, ere, vexî, vectum, carry, bring.

vel, 1. conj., or; vel...vel, either...or; 2. adv., even.

Velânus, î, m., *Quintus Velanius, one of Caesar's officers.*

Veliocasses, um, or Velioeassî, ôrum, m. plur., the Veliocasses, a tribe in northern Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine.

Vellaunodûnum, î, n., a town of the Senones, in central Gaul.

Vellâvî, ôrum, m. plur., the Vellari, a tribe in southern Gaul, near the province.

vêlôcitâs, -tâtis, f., speed, swiftness.

vêlôciter, adv., (vêlôcius, vêlôeissimê), swiftly, quickly.

vêlôx, -ôris, swift, active.

vêlum, î, n., sail.

velut, adv., just as.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f., *hunting, hunt, the chase.*

vēnātor, -tōris, m., *hunter, huntsman.*

vēn-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, sell.

Venellī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Venelli, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*

Venetī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Veneti, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*

Venetia, ae, f., *the country of the Veneti.*

Veneticus, a, um, of or with the Veneti.

venia, ae, f., *pardon, favor.*

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, come.

ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum, come often, resort, visit.

ventus, ī, m., *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

Veragrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Veragri, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.*

Verbigēms, ī, m., *one of the four cantons or divisions of the Helvetii.*

verbum, ī, n., *word; verba facere, speak.*

Vercassivellaunus, ī, m., *a leading man among the Arverni.*

Vercingetor-ix, -igis, m., *a leader of the Arverni.*

vereor, ēri, itus sum, fear, be afraid.

vergō, ere, incline, lie, face.

vergobretus, ī, m., *the title of the chief magistrate among the Aedui.*

vērisimilis, e, probable, likely.

veritus, a, um, from vereor.

vērō, indeed, in fact; but; often untranslated.

verso, āre, āvī, ātum, turn about, change; in pass. as dep., engage in, be occupied or busied, remain, be.

versus, us, m., *line, verse.*

versus, adv., and prep. w. acc. pre-
ceding, towards.

Verticō, ōnis, m., *a Nervian.*

ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn; terga vertere, to flee, take to flight.

Vernolectius, ī, m., *an Helvetian of rank.*

vērns, a, um, true; right, fair.

verutum, ī, n., *dart, javelin.*

Vesontiō, -ōnis, f., *a town of the Sequani in eastern Gaul.*

vesper, erī, m., *evening.*

vester, tra, trum, your, yours.

vestigium, ī, n., *footprint, track; spot; moment.*

vestiō, īre, ivī, itum, clothe, cover.

vestis, is, f., *clothing, garments.*

vestitus, ūs, m., *clothing, dress.*

veterānus, a, um, veteran.

vet-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, forbid, order not.

vet-us, -eris, old, former, long-standing, veteran.

vexillum, ī, n., *flag.*

vexō, āre, āvī, ātum, harass, annoy; ravage, overrun.

via, ae, f., *way, road, street, route, journey.*

viātor, -tōris, m., *traveller.*

vicēnī, ae, a, twenty each, twenty.

vicēsimus, a, um, twentieth.

vicēs, adv., *twenty times.*

vicinitās, -tātis, f., *neighborhood; as collective, the neighbors.*

vicis, gen. (nom. not found), f.,
change; in vicem, in turn.

victima, ae, f., *victim.*

victor, -tōris, m., *victor; as adj., victorious, triumphant.*

victoria, ae, f., *victory, success.*

victus, a, um, from vineo.

victus, ūs, m., *living, mode of living, life; food.*

vicus, ī, m., *village.*

videō, ēre, vidi, visum, see; in pass., be seen, seem, appear, seem good or best.

Vienna, ae, f., *a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone.*

- vigilia**, ac, f., *watch, watching* (a watch was one-fourth of the night time).
- vigintī**, *twenty*.
- vīnen**, -**minis**, n., *twig, willow, osier, wickerwork*.
- vinciō**, āre, **vīnxi**, **vinctum**, *bind*.
- vinclum**, ī, a shortened form of **vinculum**.
- vincō**, ere, **vinci**, **victum**, *conquer, defeat; overcome, exceed; gain a victory, prevail, carry one's point*.
- vinculum**, ī, n., *chain; often in plur., prison*.
- vindicō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, *claim, assert, defend; in libertatem vindicare, assert the liberty of; vindicare in w. acc., punish*.
- vineā**, ac, f., *vine-arbor; covered shed, movable shed, vinea*.
- vīnum**, ī, n., *wine*.
- violō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, *do violence to, harm, injure*.
- vir**, **virī**, m., *man; husband*.
- vīrēs**, ium, from **vis**.
- vir-gō**, -**ginis**, f., *maiden*.
- virgultum**, ī, n. (only in plur.), *brushwood, bushes*.
- Viridomarus**, ī, m., a leading man of the Aedui.
- Viridovix**, -**icis**, m., a leader of the Venelli.
- viritim**, adv., *man by man, to each*.
- Viromandui**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Viromandui, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul*.
- vir-tūs**, -**tutis**, f., *manliness, valor, bravery, courage; rigor, energy; merit, excellence, good quality*.
- vīs**, **vīm**, **vi**, plur. **vīrēs**, ium, f., *force, strength, power; fury, violence, furious attack; vigor, energy, influence; number, quantity; plur., strength, powers*.
- vīsus**, a, um, from **video**.
- vītā**, ac, f., *life, course of life*.
- vītō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, *avoid, escape*.
- vītrum**, ī, n., *wood*.
- vīvō**, ere, **vīxi**, **vīctum**, *live; w. abl., live on*.
- vīvus**, a, um, *alive, living*.
- vix**, adv., *scarcely, hardly, with difficulty*.
- Vocātes**, um, m. plur., *the Vocates, a tribe in Aquitania*.
- Vocciō**, -**ōnis**, m., a king of the Norici.
- vocō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, *call, summon, invite*.
- Vocontii**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Vocontii, a tribe in the province, near the Alps*.
- Volcae**, ārum, m. plur., *the Volcae, a tribe in the southern part of the province, with two branches, the V. Tectosages and the V. Arecomici; a branch of the former of these settled in central Germany*.
- Volcātius**, ī, m., *Caius Volcātius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers*.
- volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, *wish, be willing, desire, want; sibi velle, to want, to mean*.
- voluntārius**, a, um, *voluntary; m. as subst., volunteer*.
- voluntās**, -**tātis**, f., *wish, will, desire, inclination; willingness, consent, approval, good will*.
- voluptās**, -**tātis**, f., *pleasure*.
- Volusēnus**, ī, m., *Caius Volusenus, a military tribune with Caesar*.
- Vorēnus**, ī, m., *Lucius Vorenius, a centurion with Caesar*.
- vōs**, plur. of **tū**.
- Vosegus**, ī, m., *the Vosges Mountains, in eastern Gaul*.
- voeō**, ēre, **vōvī**, **vōtum**, *vow*.
- vōx**, **vōcis**, f., *voice, utterance, statement, cry, shout, word*.
- Vulcānus**, ī, m., *Vulcan, the Roman god of fire and metallurgy*.
- vulgō**, adv., *commonly, generally, everywhere*.
- vulgus**, ī, n., *the common people, the public, general body*.
- vulnerō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, *wound*.
- vuln-us**, -**eris**, m., *wound*.
- vultus**, ūs, m., *countenance, expression, look*.

APPENDIX I.

HINTS AND SUGGESTIONS FOR THE TRANSLATION OF CÆSAR'S LATIN.

THE CASES.

1. Nominative ; always the subject (or in agreement with the subject) of an indicative or subjunctive, [rarely of historical infinitive, 36.] N.B.—Occasionally the subject may be placed after the verb in Eng., and 'there' prefixed to the verb ; e.g. *erat difficultas*, 'there was difficulty.'

2. Genitive ; (a) may generally be translated by *of* ;

(b) Often by the Eng. possessive forms ;

(c) Where these do not yield satisfactory sense, translate by *as regards*, for which some preposition, *in, for, from*, etc., may generally be substituted ; e.g. *opinio virtutis*, 'reputation as regards (*i.e.* for) valor' ; *usus belli*, 'experience as regards (*i.e.* in) war.'

(d) With a few words, chiefly neuters used substantively, such as *quid, nihil, tantum, quantum, satis, aliquid, millia*, translate without *of* as though the words were in agreement ; e.g. *aliquid consilii*, 'some prudence,' lit. 'something of prudence.'

3. Dative ; (a) translated generally by *to*, sometimes by *for*.

(b) Sometimes the verb with which the dative is connected is translated freely, not literally, into Eng., and the Eng. verb requires the omission of *to* or *for* ; e.g. *provinciæ imperat*, 'he orders the province,' lit. 'he gives orders to the province' ; *nocet navibus*, 'it harms the ships,' lit. 'it is harmful to the ships.'

(c) In a few cases, especially with the words *usus*, *auxilium* and *praesidium*, the dative (which tells the purpose something serves) is to be translated by the Eng. predicate nominative (i.e. without a preposition), or by *as*, (or sometimes by infin. with *to*.)

(d) With the gerundive [41] by *by*.

4. Accusative ; (a) the object of transitive verbs, translate without any preposition.

(b) The subject of an infin. [34], translate as if it were the nominative.

(c) With words or phrases referring to time, translate with or without *for* (telling how long some action has taken).

(d) With words or phrases referring to distance or measurement, translate with or without *for*, (telling how far some one has gone, is distant, or something extends).

5. Ablative ; (a) If connected with a perfect participle also in the ablative and of the same gender and number, these words are without close grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence, and this 'ablative absolute construction' may be translated in a variety of ways ; e.g. *magno eorum numero interfecto, domum reverterunt* (lit. 'a large number of them having been slain, they returned home'), 'having slain, (or) after slaying, (or) on slaying, (or) when they had slain, (or) after they had slain, etc.'; *magis copiis coactis, castra oppugnant* (lit. 'a large force having been collected, they attack the camp'), 'collecting a large force, they attack, etc., (or) they collect a large force and attack, etc.'

A literal translation (into the rare Eng. nomin. absolute) is scarcely ever a good rendering. Translate generally by one of the three following ways :

i. By the Eng. active participle in *ing*, or the Eng. gerund (verbal noun) in *ing* with a preposition, *after*, *on*, sometimes *by*.

ii. By a conjunction, generally *when*, *as*, *after*, sometimes *if*, *although*, *since* ; the verb which follows may often be well turned from Lat. passive to Eng. active voice [23].

iii. By a clause (in the indicative or infinitive as the case may be) of the same grammatical value as the clause with which the ablative absolute phrase is connected ; to couple these similar or coördinate clauses, insert *and*, sometimes *but* ; here also a change to the active voice is often advisable [23].

NOTE.—This ablative absolute construction occurs less frequently with the present participle, or with an adjective or noun in place of a participle. With the present participle, trans. generally by a clause beginning with *while*, sometimes *although*, *as*, *if*, and containing a verb in the progressive form. Where there is no participle, supply *being* between the two ablatives, and this will give the meaning of the phrase and suggest a suitable translation. If a negative occurs in the ablative absolute phrase, translate by *without*.

(b) In most other cases translate by a preposition, *by* or *with*, less frequently *in* or *from*. The sense of the context will generally indicate which to choose.

(c) With words or phrases relating to time, translate by *in*, *on*, *at* (telling either the time when, or the period within which something has happened); sometimes the Eng. preposition may be omitted altogether. With the adverbs *post* or *ante*, the ablative tells how long before or after.

(d) With words denoting a quality, or in some way describing a person or thing just mentioned, translate by *of*. This ablative is connected with a noun not with a verb, and does not occur without some modifier in the ablative.

6. THE PREPOSITIONS.

(The order of frequency in Cæsar is *ad*, *in* with abl., *in* with acc., *ex*, *ab*, *cum*, *de*, *per*, *inter*, *pro*, *propter*, *apud*, *sine*, *post*, *trans*, *ante*.)

A, ab : (a) *by* (so only with passive verbs, to express the personal doer of the act.)

(b) *from*.

(c) *at*, *on*, *in*, (with *pars*, *latus*, *agmen*, *cornu*, *frons*, denoting direction).

Ad : (a) *to*, *towards*, or of movement with hostile intent, sometimes *against*.

(b) *with a view to*, for which *for* or *to* may generally be substituted (especially with gerund or gerundive [39, 40]).

(c) *near*, *by*.

Ante : *before*, (generally of time not place).

Apud : *among*, *with*.

Contra : (a) *against*. (b) *over against*, *opposite*.

Cum : *with* [see note to 31].

De : (a) *about, concerning*.

(b) *from* ; especially with *causa*, where it is better to substitute *for*.

Ex, (rarely *e*) : (a) *from*.

(b) *of*, (in speaking of part of a larger number, or of a material)

(c) *in, on, at*, (with *pars* denoting direction).

In, with the Accus. : (a) *into, to*.

(b) *against, at, on*, (of a hostile act or movement).

(c) *into the country of*, (with names of native tribes).

In, with the Abl. : (a) *in*, sometimes *on*.

(b) *among, in the country of*.

Inter : (a) *among*. *Inter se* = *one another*, generally with a preposition suggested by the context.

(b) *between*.

Per : *through, by means of, by*.

Post : *after, behind*.

Pro : (a) *before*, (of place).

(b) *in place of, as, in return for, in accordance with*.

Propter : *on account of, because of*.

Sine : *without*.

Trans : *across, beyond*.

ADJECTIVES.

7. As the adjective (while agreeing in case, gender and number with the word to which in sense it belongs), is often separated from that word (either for emphasis or euphony), it is necessary to be watchful of the indications of agreement afforded by the ending.

8. Sometimes the adjective does not agree with any word, but is used substantively, in the masculine referring to persons, in the neuter to things ; e.g. *omnes*, all ; *reliqui*, the rest ; *alii*, others ; *omnia*, all things, everything ; *multa*, many things, much.

9. In many cases what seems to be an adjective is really an adverb, (the acc. and abl. cases being often used adverbially); e.g. *multum, multo, plurimum, facile, facilius, subito, certo, necessario, primum, una*.

10. The comparative and superlative forms are often used when no comparison is being made. The superlative is often to be translated by *very (exceedingly, fully)* with the positive form, and often the positive alone is a sufficient rendering. The comparative is sometimes to be translated by *too, rather, unusually, or considerably*, with the positive form. This applies to adverbs also, as well as adjectives.

THE PRONOUNS.

(These are arranged in the order of frequency of occurrence.)

11. *Qui, quae, quod*; the relative pronoun; regularly the first word in the clause, often preceding conjunctions or prepositions, though coming after them in the Eng. translation.

(a) *who, which, whom, whose*, limiting or defining a noun or pronoun (especially *is* and *hic*), which is called the antecedent.

(b) After a pause (even after a period, and at the beginning of a new chapter), used to carry on the narration; translate by *this, he, if singular, by these, they, if plural*. [*Cujus=his, quorum=their*.] Sometimes a conjunction, *and, but, for*, may be used to introduce the sentence. In a few cases, when the pause is a comma, it will be good Eng. to translate by *which*.

(c) With *mitto, praemitto*, and occasionally other verbs, followed by a subjunctive expressing purpose. Translate by infinitive with *to* [29].

(d) Difficulty is sometimes caused by certain peculiarities of the antecedent.

i. The antecedent is often not expressed; *qui* (plur.)—*those who, quod* or *quae* (nenter)—*what*, or sometimes *as*.

ii. The antecedent is often repeated with the relative (especially *pars, res, locus, dies*). Omit in translating.

iii. The antecedent (generally *hic*, sometimes *is*) comes after the whole relative clause. In the Eng. it should precede, sometimes being repeated after the relative clause.

iv. The antecedent is often transferred to the relative clause and takes its case from the relative. (This is generally when the relative clause precedes the words it depends on, or when

the relative refers to words in apposition). Translate by putting the antecedent before the relative clause ; e.g. *quam nacti erant praedam, relinquunt*, (lit. 'what plunder they had got, they leave')—'they leave the plunder which they had got.' Where, however, the relative refers to words in apposition, a literal translation is often good Eng.

12. Is, ea, id ; (a) in agreement with a noun, *that, those*. Where a relative clause follows, *the* is often a good rendering. Sometimes where Latin uses the word for *that*, Eng. would prefer to use *this*.

(b) When not in agreement with a noun ; in sing. *he, him*, if masc., *that, it*, if neut. ; in plur. *they, them*, or if the antecedent of a relative, *those*. N.B.—*Ejus*=*his*, *eorum*=*their*, *ea quae* (neut. plur.)=*what*, *id quod*=*what* or *as*.

13. Hic, haec, hoc ; *this, these*. N.B.—*Haec* (neut. plur), or *hic* in agreement with *res, rerum, rebus*=*this* (lit. 'these things'). Often *hic* is well rendered by *the following*. Occasionally *hic* in sing. without a noun=*he, him*. Sometimes where Latin uses the word for *this*, Eng. would prefer to use *that*.

14. Se, sese, sui, sibi ; (a) referring to the subject of the verb with which it is connected : translate by *himself, itself*, if that subject is sing. ; by *themselves*, if plural.

(b) But when the verb it is connected with depends closely on a verb or phrase meaning 'to say, order, think, ask, wish, point out, etc.', it will refer to the subject of this latter verb ; translate by *him, it*, if that subject is sing. ; by *them*, if plural.

(c) When *se, sese*, is the subj. of an infin. [34], trans. by *he* or *they*, referring to the subj. of the verb on which the infin. depends.

(d) In long passages of reported speech, the translation of *se* must be settled by the sense required, though as a rule *se* refers to the speaker. Exceptions to the above rules are chiefly of two classes : i. in common reflexive expressions such as *se colligere, se recipere*, to be translated as in (a), or in the phrase *inter se*=one another ; and ii. where the verb with which *se* is connected only indirectly depends on one of the verbs mentioned in (b). In all such cases the translation may easily be decided by the context.

15. Suus, a, um ; (a) *his, his own, or their, their own*, according as the word it refers to (not the word it agrees with) is sing. or

plur. The word *suus* refers to is determined in the same way as with *se* [14, a, b, d.].

(b) Where not needed for clearness' sake, *suus* is used for emphasis, especially in contrast; trans. by *his*, *their*, emphasized, or by *his own*, *their own*.

(c) In the plural without agreeing with any noun; *sui* (masc.) = *his* or *their troops, friends, comrades, people, family*; *sua* (neut.) = *his* or *their possessions, property*.

16. *Noster, -tra, -trum*; *our*, in Cæsar = 'of the Romans.' The plural *nostri* without any noun in agreement = *our troops, forces, men*.

17. *Ipse, a, um*; (a) if not in agreement with any noun; translate by *he himself, they themselves*, or sometimes *he, they*, emphasized.

(b) If agreeing with a noun or pronoun; translate by *himself, themselves*.

18. *Ille, a, ud*; (a) contrasted with other persons, just mentioned; translate by *he, they*, emphasized.

(b) Referring to persons just mentioned, who are not the subject of the last sentence; *he, they*, often well rendered by *the others, the enemy, the latter*. (Generally in the plural and at the beginning of a new sentence, to mark a change of subject.)

(c) In agreement with a noun, *that*.

19. *Idem, eadem, idem*; *the same*.

20. *Quis, quid* (substantival); *qui, quae, quod* (adjectival); the interrogative pronoun: *who, what*.

21. *Quis, quid* (substantival); *qui, qua, quod* (adjectival); indefinite pronoun: (a) in agreement with a noun, *any*.

(b) Not in agreement with any noun, *anyone, anything*. N.B.—*Quis*, the indefinite, occurs only after *si* and *ne* in Cæsar.

22. *Quisque*; *each* (of several). *Uterque*; *each* (of two), *both, either*. *Aliquis*, or *aliqui*; *some one, some, something*. *Quisquam*; *anyone, anything*. *Ullus*; *any*. *Quidam*; *a certain one, one, certain*. *Quicumque*; *whoever, whatever*.

THE VOICES.

23. While the Active and the Passive forms of the verb are to be carefully distinguished, it should be noticed that the two voices are merely two ways of viewing the same action, and therefore what Latin expresses in one voice may often be well rendered into Eng. by the other voice. This change is especially frequent in the abl. absol. [5. a.], the impersonal passive construction [24] and the gerundive [40. 41.] Often the subject of the Eng. active must be gathered from the context.

24. With a transitive verb, an act may be expressed by either the active or the passive voice; e.g. 'they sent ambassadors' or 'ambassadors were sent by them.' But with an intransitive verb only the active voice may be used in Eng.; e.g. 'they hesitate.' But in Latin even with intransitive verbs (*i.e.* such as do not govern an accus.) the passive voice also may be used, expressing e.g. the idea of hesitating, coming, fighting, without mentioning necessarily *who* hesitated, etc.; e.g. *pugnatum est*, 'there was fighting' or 'fighting took place'; *non dubitandum est*, 'there ought not to be hesitating.' Translate such phrases by using the Eng. active, supplying the subject which the context suggests (or which with a gerundive is expressed often by a dative [3. d]); e.g. 'they fought,' 'he must not hesitate.'

THE MOODS AND TENSES.

THE INDICATIVE.

25. Present: translate by the Eng. present tense. Often the present is used for the past, to represent an act more vividly, and as this is commoner in Latin than in Eng. the Latin present may often be translated by the Eng. past.

26. Imperfect: (a) translate in most cases by Eng. past tense, or with negatives by *did*. This will be a correct rendering where our past tense expresses i. thoughts or feelings (the habitual way of thinking, or the thoughts which influence one in thinking over plans, or considering a situation, but not a thought expressing the decision one has come to); ii. a situation, or condition of affairs; iii. an action in progress (going on); iv. an habitual action, a usual state of things, an act often repeated or persisted in.

(b) To express more clearly an action in progress [a. iii], translate by *was, were*, with the verbal form in *-ing*, (Eng. past progressive).

(c) To express more clearly an habitual or repeated action [a. iv.], translate by *used to*, *would*, or *kept*.

(d) Occasionally, to express an attempted action, translate by *tried to* or *began to*.

27. Perfect : (a) translate generally by Eng. past tense :

(b) Occasionally by Eng. perfect with *have*, (generally where Cæsar is referring to something he has already mentioned).

28. Pluperfect : translate by Eng. past perfect, with *had*. (But with *cum* = whenever, translate by Eng. past tense.)

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

29. A clause introduced by *ut* (*uti*), *ne*, *quo*, or the relative pronoun [11. c.], and expressing purpose or the end in view : (a) translate by *that*, *in order that*, followed by *may* or *might*.

(b) More frequently, and especially after verbs meaning 'to urge, ask, command, advise, persuade,' translate by Eng. infin. with *to*.

30. A clause introduced by *ut* (*uti*), and expressing result ; (a) translate by *that*, sometimes *so that*, followed by the Eng. rendering of the *indicative* of the same tense [25-28]. This includes *ut* and subj. after verbs of 'happening.'

(b) By *so as to*, with the Eng. infin.

31. A clause introduced by *cum*^{*}, *quod*, the relative pronoun (except as in [29]), a relative adverb, or by any interrogative word : translate by the Eng. rendering of the *indicative* of the same tense [25-28], with the following variations :

Often in quoting the words or thoughts of another, the present is best rendered by the Eng. past, and the perfect, by the Eng. past perfect, with *had*.

The imperfect subj. is more frequently to be translated by the Eng. past progressive (*was* or *were* with the verbal form in *-ing*), than the imperfect indic. is.

The pluperfect, especially with *cum*, is often best rendered by the Eng. past tense. The pluperfect with *cum* may generally

^{*} *Cum* the conjunction = *when*, *since*, and *cum* the preposition = *with* are to be carefully distinguished. The latter will be followed always by an ablative. Hence where an abl. does not follow with which *cum* could go, it will be the conj.; if an abl. does follow, it will probably be the prep., but *may* be the conj.

also be rendered by the same translations as are given for the perfect participle [37. a]; e.g. *cum vidisset*, = 'having seen, seeing, on seeing,' as well as 'when he saw.'

32. A clause introduced by *si, nisi*: translate as though the subj. were an indicative [25-28], but the present is sometimes, and the pluperfect generally, best rendered by Eng. past tense; the imperfect translate by Eng. past tense, or sometimes by *were to, should*.

THE INFINITIVE.

33. (a) The present inf., active or passive, completing the meaning of a verb; translate by Eng. infin. with *to*, except after *possum* (*can, could*), where *to* is omitted. The verbs after which this use of the inf. is most often found are: *possum, jubeo* and *coepi*; *consuesco, volo, conor, audeo* and *cogo* also are frequent.

(b) After the passive of *dico, existimo* and *video*, translate a present infin. by Eng. infin. with *to*, a perfect infin. by *to have*.

34. (a) Often the present infin., and regularly the perfect infin., the future infin. and the gerundive with *esse*, are to be translated by a clause introduced by *that* with its verb in the indicative. In such a case the subject of the infin. will be in the accus. case and is to be translated as if it were the nomin.

(b) This 'accus. and infin. construction' is found after verbs or phrases meaning 'to state, think, learn, know, perceive, etc.,' of which those most commonly occurring are *dico, video, existimo, arbitror, intelligo, cognosco, certiorum facio* and *demonstro*.

(c) Repeatedly with the future infin. act., the gerundive with *esse*, and sometimes with the perfect infin. pass., *esse* is omitted and the infin. appears to be a participle. A future participle in *-rus* in the accus., or a gerundive in the accus. without a preposition, is in Cæsar to be regarded regularly as an infin.

(d) Translate the various tenses as follows: the present by *was, were*, with the verbal form in *-ing* (Eng. past progressive); the perfect by *had* (Eng. past perfect) or by Eng. past tense; the future by *would*; the gerundive by *should, ought, must* [41]. [But if the verb of stating, etc. be in the present tense, *was* or *were* should be changed to *is, are*; *had* to *have* and *would* to *will*.] N.B.—*posse*=*could*, *esse*=*was, were*.

35. (a) Sometimes the infin. (generally the present) is used as a substantive serving as the subject of some verb. This verb is

generally to be translated with the subject *it*, and the infin. by the Eng. infin. with *to*. If a subject of the infin. is given it should be placed before the Eng. infin. and be preceded by *for*.

(b) This same use of the infin. is with *licet* and *oportet* better translated more freely; e.g. *licet eis venire* = 'they may come'; *oportet eos venire* = 'they ought to (or should) come.'

36. The present infin. sometimes in spirited narrative does not depend on any verb, and is to be translated by the Eng. present or past indicative; or if it indicates repeated (incessant) action it may be well rendered by *kept* followed by the verbal form in *-ing*. [The subject of this 'historical infin.' is in the nominative.]

THE PARTICIPLES.

37. The perfect partic. (a) in the nom. case, or in the accus. referring to the subject of an infin., is to be translated, if in the passive voice, by *having been*, *on being*, *after being*, or *being* (e.g. sent); if a deponent, by *having* (e.g. set out) or *on*, *after*, with the verbal form in *-ing* (e.g. setting out), or sometimes, especially with verbs expressing a thought or feeling, by the Eng. partic. in *-ing* (e.g. suspecting).

N.B.—It will sometimes be advisable to translate the partic. in this case by a clause of the same grammatical value as that with which the partic. is connected, joining the two clauses by *and* (or *but*): e.g. *repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt*, 'they were driven back by the cavalry and concealed themselves in the woods,' lit. 'having been driven back they concealed'

(b) In the abl. case in agreement with a noun, the perfect partic. will be translated as in [5. a.].

(c) In other cases translate the perfect partic., if in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by the Eng. past partic. passive or by a clause in the indic. (generally the past perfect with *had*) beginning with *who*, *which*; if not in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by a clause beginning *those who had*.

38. The present partic. may generally be translated, if in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by *while*, followed either by the Eng. partic. in *-ing*, or by *was*, *were* with the verbal form in *-ing* (Eng. past progressive); if not in agreement with a noun or pronoun, by a clause beginning with *those who were* followed by the verbal form in *-ing*.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

39. The Latin gerund in *-ndi, -ndo, -ndum*, is to be translated by the Eng. gerund or verbal noun in *-ing*. The gen. is the case most frequently occurring, (especially with *causā*=‘for the purpose’), and is to be translated according to [2. *a.* and *c.*] The accusative often occurs with *ad*=*for* (‘with a view to’).

(*b*) *Causā* with the gen., and *ad* with the accus. of the gerund express purpose and may often be best rendered by the Eng. infin. with *to*.

40. The gerundive in *-ndus, a, um*, in the gen., the accus. with *ad*, and sometimes the dat. or the abl., is found in agreement with nouns (or rarely pronouns). Although really passive and in agreement, it is to be translated by the active gerund or verbal noun in *-ing*, governing the word with which in Latin it really agrees. For the translation of the gen. and of the accus. with *ad* see [39]. The dat. is to be translated by *for*. The abl. is either used with a prep., especially *in*, or expresses ‘means,’ to be translated by *by*.

41. The gerundive in *-ndus, a, um* in the nom., or in the accus. without a prep. is used with the verb *sum*, though after verbs of *thinking* and *deciding* the infin. *esse* is generally omitted. Thus used, the gerundive and *sum* are to be translated by *should, ought, must, or had to*. A literal rendering would be in the passive voice, but it is generally better to use the active in Eng. The subject of this active verb will either be found in a dative connected with the gerundive [3. *d.*], or will more often be readily supplied from the context.



APPENDIX II.

TRANSLATION FROM ENGLISH TO LATIN.

I.—SUGGESTIONS AND GENERAL REMARKS.*

1. Case of Nouns and Pronouns without Prepositions.

- (a) **subject** of a verb : **nom.** ; but **acc.** if Latin verb is infin., and **dat.** with *ought*, *must*, expressed by the gerundive (as in § 8. b.)
- (b) **object** of a verb : **acc.** ; but **abl.** after *utor*, and **dat.** after *impero*, *praesum*, *persuadeo*, *resisto*, etc.
- (c) indicating **time** : **abl.**, time when, or within which ; **acc.**, time how long.
- (d) indicating **distance** or **extent** : **acc.** ; but **abl.** with idea of surpassing or separation.
- (e) after verb **to be** ; **nom.** ; but **acc.** if Latin verb is infin. w. subject accus., and **dat.** of nouns meaning *aid*, *advantage*, *hindrance*.
- (f) after verbs **to be made**, **be chosen**, **become**, **seem**, **be thought** : **nom.** ; but **acc.** if Latin verb is infin. with subject accus.
- (g) words in **apposition** : in the same case.
- (h) **nom.** of **address** : the **voc.**
- (i) phrase used **absolutely** : **abl. absol.**, or **cum** clause.

* These suggestions deal entirely with usages commonly occurring in Caesar's Latin, and are intended either for help in the translation of sentences or passages based on Caesar, or for the purpose of rapid review. Being largely rules of thumb, they will not of course take the place of a systematic or complete statement of the rules of syntax.

2. Case of Nouns and Pronouns with Prepositions.

NOTE.—Latin avoids joining two nouns by a preposition. In such a case, if *as regards* can be fairly substituted for the preposition, use the gen.; otherwise a clause (chiefly relative).

about,	=concerning,	de.
against,	w. verbs of motion, =in opposition to,	in w. acc. contra.
at,	telling time when, expressing hostile act, =near (of place),	abl. in w. acc. ad.
by,	personal agent, w. pass., =by means of, telling time when,	a. ab; but dat. w. gerim- abl; but per of persons. abl.
for,	telling time how long, telling extent of space, =with a view to,	acc. acc. ad; but in w. acc. with words of time.
	of motion towards, w. 'reason' (<i>causa</i>), telling purpose to be served or persons concerned,	ad. de. dat.
from,	w. verbs of taking away.	a. ab; but ex, if =out of. dat.
in,	telling time when, telling place where, telling direction in which, telling direction to which, =in regard to, telling manner,	abl. in w. abl. a. ab. in w. acc. abl. [no modifier. abl.; but cum if noun has
into,		in w. acc.
of,	denoting a part,	gen.; or ex with numerals and adjectives of num- ber, but de w. <i>præci</i> .
	=concerning, giving qualities, character- istics,	de.
	=belonging to, or w. verbal nouns,	abl. or gen.: (always gen. of number).
on,	telling time when, telling place where, telling direction in which,	gen. abl. in w. abl. a. ab.
through,		per.
to,	w. verbs of motion, =with reference to, of the person concerned, or the indirect object,	ad; but in w. acc. of motion so as to be in a place. dat.
with,	=together with, =by means of, telling manner,	dat. cum. abl. abl.; but cum if the noun has no modifier

3. Pronouns.

(a) **who, what, which, whose, whom :**

i. after verbs=*ask, learn, find out, know, tell, point out, see decide, quis, quae, quid, w. subjunctive.*
[what (substantive)=*quid* or *quae* ; which (of two)=*uter.*]

ii. Referring to an antecedent expressed or necessarily understood, **qui, quae, quod, w. indic. ;** but w. subj. if expressing another's words or thoughts.
[what (substantive)=*ea quae* or *id quod.*]

(b) **he, him ; they, them,—i.** In a clause depending on a verb=*say, order, think, ask, wish, point out,* if referring to the same person as the subject of that verb, **sui, sibi, se (sese).**

ii. In other cases, **is,** or if emphatic by contrast **ille ;** when there is no contrast and the same persons have been prominently referred to in the preceding sentence, **qui,** beginning the clause.

(c) **his, their,—i.** unless emphatic, not expressed if the omission would cause no obscurity.

ii. otherwise **suus** in such cases as *b. i.* above, and **ejus, eorum** in other cases.

(d) **that,—is ;** or if emphatic by contrast **ille.**

(e) **this,—hic ;** or referring to something prominently mentioned in the preceding sentence, **qui.**

(f) **himself, themselves,—ipse,** if purely for emphasis sake ; **se,** if used reflexively.

(g) **his own, their own,—suus,** referring to persons already mentioned.

(h) **any,—i.** after *si, ne, nisi, num ; quis, quid* (substantival), **qui, qua, quod** (adjectival).

ii. =even one, in negative sentences or with *rix, sine, quisquam, quicquam* (substantival), *ullus, a, um* (adjectival).

iii. =every one, **quivis.**

(i) **each,—quisque,** of several ; **uterque,** of two.

(k) **some,—aliquis**=some or other ; **nonnulli**=a few ; **quidam**=a certain ; **alii . . alii**=some . . others.

4. Infinitive with To.

- (a) expressing purpose, or the end in view ;—
 ut (or ne for negative clauses) w. subj.,
 or qui w. subj. after verbs of sending,
 or for short phrases ad or causa w. gerund or
 gerundive.
- N.B.—After *urge*, *ask*, *command* (except *jubeo*), *advise*,
persuade, *try* (except *conor*), use ut (or ne for nega-
 tive clauses) w. subj. of purpose.
- (b) completing the meaning of a verb, especially after
order (if *jubeo*) *begin*, *be accustomed*, *wish*, *try* (if
conor), *venture*, *compel*, *resolve*, *seem* ;—pres. infin.
- (c) after verbs = *promise*, *hope* ;—accus. w. fut. infin.
- (d) after *such as* or *so as* ;—ut w. subj.

5. Subordinate Conjunctions.

- (a) *that*,—indicating purpose, ut, ne, quo, w. subj.
 indicating result and w. verbs = *happen*, ut w. subj.
 after verbs = *state*, *think*, *learn*, *know*, *perceive*, accus.
 w. infin.
 after verbs = *fear*, ne (or ut = that not) w. subj.
- (b) *when*, *after*, *as*, *since*, *if*, *although*,—i. in a *short*
 clause referring to a time *previous* to that of the
 clause on which it depends :
- (i) if Eng. is act. and Latin verb is transitive,*
 abl. absol. (in passive voice).
- (ii) if Eng. is act. and Latin verb is deponent,
 perf. part. in agreement.
- (iii) if Eng. is pass. and Latin verb is transitive,*
 perf. part. in agreement.
- ii. otherwise : *when*, *after*, cum w. subj. (rarely ubi or
 postquam w. ind.)
as, *since*, cum w. subj. ; (sometimes quod w. ind.)
if, si ; *if not*, nisi.
although, etsi.
- (c) *because*,—quod w. ind. ; but w. subj. if expressing
 another's statement or thought.
- (d) *while*,—dum (w. pres. ind. in ordinary narrative).
- (e) *until*,—dum w. ind. ; but w. subj. if one's purpose or
 object is involved.
- (g) *lest*,—ne w. subj.
- (h) *whenever*,—cum w. ind. (perf. or pluperf. § 6. a.)

* A transitive verb in Latin is one which in the active voice takes
 an object in the accus. case.

6. Tenses, where the mood has already been decided.

[Latin is far more logically correct than English in its tenses, especially in indicating the relation of a principal and a dependent clause.]

(a) Indicative.

- i. English **progressive past** tense = Latin **imperf.** ;
(but w. *dum*, see 5. d.)
- ii. English **simple past** tense = Latin **perfect** ; but
imperfect w. verbs = *think, know, feel*, or when
indicating a condition of things, a situation,
or an habitual action ; and **pluperf.** w. *when-*
ever or *whoever*.
- iii. English **present** tense in clauses w. *whenever* or
whoever, = Latin **perfect**.

(b) Subjunctive.

- i. Clauses of **purpose**, **present** if depending on verb
in *pres.*, *fut.*, or *perf.* (= English *perf.* w. *have*) ;
imperf. if depending on verb in *imperf.*, *plu-*
perf., or *perf.* (= Eng. *simple past*).
[NOTE.—After the *historical present* either *pres.*
or *imperf.* may be used.]
- ii. Clauses of **result**, the same tense as in English,
except that Latin **imperfect** is generally used
for Eng. *past* tense.
- iii. In all other cases (*e.g.* w. *cum*, *si*, *quod*, or *pro-*
nouns), the *same* tense as in English, except
that the English *simple past* is the Latin
imperfect, unless it refers to a time *previous*
to that of the clause on which it depends, when
the **pluperf.** is used ; in the same case the
perf. is used for Eng. *simple pres.* (Test by
substituting *had* or *have*.)

(c) Infinitive (in accus. w. infin. construction).

Change the Eng. words so as to get what was actually
said or thought, and take the corresponding tense
of the infin. ; that is :—

If referring to the *same* time as verb of stating,
thinking, etc., **present**.

If referring to time *before* that of verb of stating,
thinking, etc., **perfect**.

If referring to time *after* that of verb of stating,
thinking, etc., **future**.

For *would have* use *fuisse* w. partic. in *-urus*

7. Participles and Gerund (or Verbal in -ing).

- (a) The **past participle**, with *having*,
or the **present part.** if = past part. with *having*, or a
clause with *since*, *after*, or *as*,
or the **gerund** (or verbal in -ing) preceded by **on**, **after**,
are to be translated as follows :
If the Latin verb is *intransitive*, by *cum* w. subj.
If the Latin verb is *transitive*,
i. Eng. *passive voice*, by Latin perf. part. pass.
in agreement.
ii. Eng. *active voice* in *long* clauses, by *cum* w. subj.
iii. Eng. *active voice* in *short* clauses, by perf. part.
pass. in abl. absol., or by perf. part. depen-
nent in agreement.
- (b) The **present participle** is almost invariably to be trans-
lated as in *a* above ; in other cases by
pres. part. in agreement, in *short* phrases,
qui or **dum** clause, in *long* phrases.
- (c) The **gerund** (or verbal in -ing).
i. after **of** or other prepositions replaceable by *as*
regards, gen. of gerund or gerundive con-
struction.
ii. after **for** (= *with a view to*) by *ad* w. acc. of
gerund or gerundive construction.
iii. after **on**, **after**, see *a* above.

8. Miscellaneous.

- (a) It is often of advantage to translate by a different voice.
- (b) **Ought**, **must**, and equivalent phrases are generally to
be translated by the **gerundive** with **sum**, the
Latin verb being always *passive*, and, if intransi-
tive, used impersonally. The person who *ought to*
or *must* do something will be in the **dative**. [*Debet*,
oportet and *necesse est* w. the infin. are much rarer.]
- (c) **Can**, **could**, = *possum* w. pres. infin.
- (d) **As**, w. words = *aid*, *garrison*, *guard*, etc., implying the
purpose served, expressed by the **dat.**
after *the same* = **qui** or **ac.**
where *as* is repeated, by *correlatives*, e.g. *as great*
as, *tantus quantus*.
in phrases like 'as great as possible' by *quam* w.
superlative.
- (e) Treat clauses with **where**, **why**, **how**, etc., as in § 3. *a*.

- (f) It with the verb *to be* where the real subj. follows, and **there** as an introductory adverb, are not expressed in Latin.
- (g) Where a verb is compounded with a preposition (*e.g. ad, ab, ex*), this preposition cannot at the same time govern a noun.
- (h) The adjectives **more, any, enough, no, and thousand** (except *one thousand*) agreeing with a noun are expressed by the neuters *plus, quicquam, satis, nihil* and *millia* followed by the noun in the **genitive**.
- (i) Where English has a number of co-ordinate clauses, translate those which lead up to some final result, or which state previous or attendant circumstances, by participles, or if of some length by subordinate clauses. In other words *reduce* the number of verbs connected by *and, but, so*, etc. [*e.g. He gives orders to collect a large force and to attack the camp, = imperat ut magnis copiis coactis castra oppugnet. They had sent ambassadors and sued for peace, but yet made war on Caesar = cum missis legatis pacem petissent, bellum Caesari intulerunt.*]

II.—LIST OF WORDS MOST COMMONLY OCCURRING IN CAESAR.

(Arranged in Order of Frequency.)

qui	magnus	legio	cognosco	equitatus
in	facio	dies	oppidum	dico
sum	non	civitas	finis	numerus
is	possum	habeo	consilium	sed
-que	quod	reliquus	legatus	per
et	neque, nec	si	proelium	flumen
ad	cum (<i>conj.</i>)	bellum	ille	do
hic	hostis	miles	eques	etiam
se	locus	mitto	mille	tantus
a, ab	castra	ne	navis	constituo
omnis	cum (<i>prep.</i>)	copia	unus	homo
e, ex	pars	causa	idem	alius
ut, uti	noster	video	quam	quis (<i>inter-</i>
atque	de	appello (<i>are</i>)	iter	<i>rog.</i>)
res	ac	venio	jubeo	summus
suus	ipse	exercitus	tempus	interficio

longus	propter	accido	revertor	magnitudo
multitudo	pugno	apud	singuli	nuntio
populus	ubi	pono	tertius	occupo
prope	circiter	quidem	timor	reduco
inter	imperium	spatium	usus	trado
arma	nullus	acies	agmen	accedo
pro	alter	aut	conor	circumvenio
proficiscor	frumentum	ita	domus	dum
existimo	periculum	quo (<i>adv.</i>)	genus	dux
relinquo	nihil	adduco	intermitto	egredior
duo	silva	post	minus	eo (<i>verb.</i>)
recipio	contineo	ratio	mons	exterus
tamen	contra	regio	paro	facultas
contendo	annus	sine	perterreo	fossa
munitio	spes	arbitror	confirmo	frater
auxilium	utor	finitimus	efficio	ordo
obses	ibi	quantus	injuria	pax
fuga	discedo	telum	pons	potestas
multus	teneo	complures	transduco	progredior
virtus	impetus	facile	at	publicus
gero	instituo	fortuna	barbarus	reperio
cogo	conficio	impedio	communis	subsidium
eo (<i>adv.</i>)	impedimen-	princeps	consuetudo	aliquis
impero	tum	ago	deduco	confero
jam	murus	consuesco	interim	defero
animus	salus	pauci	labor	deligo
fero	tum	sustineo	sequor	frumentarius
peto	manus	demonstro	una	modus
quis (<i>indef.</i>)	provincia	duco	amicitia	polliceor
volo	adventus	munio	audio	praeicio
ante	certus	collis	natura	praesum
celeriter	consisto	conjicio	prinsquam	quisquam
longe	hiberna	dimitto	subito	supero
ager	nam	tres	auctoritas	supra
capio	nox	uterque	autem	undique
coepi	opus	committo	itaque	agger
praesidium	prohibeo	concilium	medius	centurio
superior	signum	fides	posterus	cohortor
transeo	cohors	vallum	sic	latus
totus	fere	colloco	turris	obtineo
passus	intelligo	exspecto	audeo	opinio
primus	quisque	novus	celeritas	quin
convenio	pes	nuntius	defendo	ulius
accipio	vis	porta	equus	vereor
pervenio	absum	pugna	item	

APPENDIX III.

EXERCISES BASED ON THE BELLUM BRITANNICUM.

PART I.—CHAPTERS 20–22 OF BOOK IV. SIMPLIFIED AS A PRELIMINARY EXERCISE FOR BEGINNERS.

CHAP. 20.

1.—Exigua pars aestatis reliqua erat. In his locis¹ maturae sunt hiemes. Caesar tamen in Britanniam proficisci² contendit. Hostibus nostris auxilia a³ Britannia subministrata erant. Omnibus fere Gallicis bellis⁴ inde subministrata esse⁵ auxilia intellegebat⁶.

2.—Tempus anni ad bellum gerendum⁷ deficiebat⁸. Tamen insulam adire statuit. Genus hominum perspicere⁹, loca¹, portus, aditus cognoscere volebat. Haec¹⁰ magno usui¹¹ sunt. Haec magno sibi¹² usui fore¹³ arbitrabatur^{2,6}. Haec omnia fere Gallis erant incognita.

3.—Nemo enim¹⁴ praeter mercatores illo¹⁵ adit¹⁶. Neque mercatoribus ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam notum¹⁷ est. Eae regiones quae sunt contra Galliam notae sunt.

4.—Mercatores ad se¹² undique vocat. Itaque, vocatis¹⁸ mercatoribus, nihil reperire poterat. Quanta est insulae magnitudo. Quae¹⁹ aut quantaes nationes insulam incolunt? Quem¹⁹ usum belli habent? Quibus¹⁹ institutis²⁰ utuntur²? Qui¹⁹ portus ad navium multitudinem idonei sunt? Qui¹⁹ essent²¹ idonei portus reperire non poterat.

NOTES.

1. Avoid translating *loca* by 'places'; use rather 'parts, region, country.'
2. A deponent verb, *i.e.* passive in form, but with active force.
3. *A* means 'by' with persons only; what other meaning has it? App.6.
4. The abl. without a preposition telling the *time when*; supply a preposition in English. App.5.c.
5. Accus. and infin. construction; translate by a clause beginning with 'that'; *auxilia* is the subject of *administrata esse*. App.34.a.d.

6. Translate by English simple past tense; App.26.*a*.
7. *Ad...gerendum*, translate 'for waging'; the gerundive construction, App.40.
8. Literally, 'was lacking'; freely, 'was too short.'
9. The connective is often omitted in Latin where English would use 'and.'
10. Add 'things' in the English translation. App.8.
11. Translate the dative here by 'of.' App.3.*c*.
12. The pronoun refers to the subject of the principal verb; translate by 'him' not 'himself.' App.14.*b*.
13. The same construction as in note 5 above; *haec* is the subject, supply 'that' and translate by 'would be.' App.34.*a.d*.
14. The order of this and the preceding word will be reversed in English.
15. An adverb, not the pronoun.
16. From the verb *adeo*.
17. From the verb *nosco*.
18. The ablative absolute construction, App.5.*a*.; translate as in App. 5.*a.ii*., using 'although.'
19. The relative used adjectively, agreeing with the noun; translate 'what.'
20. Translate abl. without any preposition; *utro* takes an abl. where we might expect an object in the accus.
21. A dependent clause introduced by an interrogative word; translate the subjunctive as you would the same tense of the indicative. App.31.

CHAP. 21.

1.—*Haec cognoscere volebat, priusquam periculum faceret¹. Idoneum esse arbitratur Volusenum. Ad haec cognoscenda², Volusenum cum navi³ longa praemittit.*

2.—*Voluseno⁴ mandat ut⁵ omnia⁶ exploret. Huic⁴ mandat ut⁵ ad se quam⁷ primum revertatur.*

3.—*Ipsa cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur. Inde erat brevissimus in⁸ Britanniam trajectus.*

4.—*Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus jubet convenire. Classem, quam superiore aestate⁹ ad¹⁰ Veneticum bellum effecerat, jubet convenire.*

5.—*Interim consilium ejus¹¹ per mercatores ad Britannos perlatum est. Consilio ejus cognito, a compluribus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt. Pollicentur obsides dare atque imperio⁴ populi Romani obtemperare.*

6.—*Legatis auditis, hortatus est ut⁵ in ea sententia permanerent. Liberaliter pollicitus,¹² legatos domum¹³ remittit, et cum iis una¹⁴ Commium mittit.*

7.—Caesar ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, Commium regem¹⁵ constituerat. Virtutem ejus¹¹ et consilium probabat. Eum sibi¹⁶ fidelem esse arbitrabatur. Commii auctoritas in his regionibus magni¹⁷ habebatur.

8.—Huic⁴ imperat ut⁵ adeat civitates. Imperat ut civitates hortetur, ut¹⁸ populi Romani fidem sequantur.¹⁹ Imperat ut nuntiet se celeriter eo²⁰ venturum.²¹

9.—Volusenus navi²² egredi ac se barbaris committere non audet. Perspectis regionibus omnibus, quinto die⁹ ad Caesarem revertitur. Quae²³ ibi perspexisset,²⁴ renuntiat.

NOTES.

1. Literally, 'he should make'; freely, 'making.'
2. The gerundive construction; App.10.
3. *Navis* has the abl. regularly in *i*, not in *e*.
4. In translating this dat., 'to' should be omitted. App.3.b.
5. *Ut* and subjunctive after the verbs *impero*, *mando* or *hortor* are to be translated by English infinitive with 'to.' App.29.b.
6. Do not use 'things' in the English. App.8.
7. For the meaning of *quam primum*, see Vocabulary under *primum*.
8. *In* with accus. has other meanings than 'into.' App.6.
9. See App.5.c.
10. *Ad* has other meanings than 'to.' App.6.
11. Literally 'of him.' For a good English rendering, see App.12.b.
12. 'Having made promises.' Being deponent, the perf. part. pass. has active force.
13. The accus. of this word is used without a preposition, to denote *motion towards*, exactly like the English 'home.'
14. Could *una* agree with *Commius*? See Vocabulary under *una*.
15. *Regem constituere* = 'to establish as king, to make king.'
16. *Eum* and *sibi* both mean 'him,' but refer to different persons. App.14.b.
17. *Magni*, a neuter genitive used with adverbial force. See Vocabulary. *Habeo* here means 'value.'
18. *Ut...sequantur* depends on *hortetur*, and *ut...hortetur* on *imperat*. Both subjunctives are to be translated as in note 5 above.
19. *Fidem sequi* = 'to embrace the alliance.'
20. An adverb, not the pronoun.
21. *Venturum* for *venturum esse*. For this common omission of *esse*, see App.34.c.
22. *Navis* with *egredior* has the same meaning as *e navi*. See note 3 above.
23. *Quae*, 'what'; literally 'what things'; the object of *perspexisset*.
24. See note 21 on Chap. XX. above.

CHAP. 22.

1.—Dum in his locis¹ Caesar navium parandarum² causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt. Legati venerunt qui³ se excusarent. Se de superioris temporis consilio⁴ excusabant quod bellum populo⁵ Romano fecissent.⁶ Ea quae imperaveris,⁷ faciemus. Legati venerunt qui⁵ pollicerentur se, ea quae imperavisset,⁸ facturos.⁹

2.—Hoc sibi Caesar opportune accidisse arbitratus, magnum iis¹⁰ numerum obsidum imperat. Neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat neque belli gerendi² facultatem propter anni tempus habebat. Tantulas res Britanniae anteponeudas¹¹ non iudicabat. Obsidibus acceptis, Morinos in fidem recepit.

3.—Naves circiter octoginta onerariae coactae sunt, quot¹² satis esse ad duas transportandas² legiones existimabat. Naves longas quaestori legatis praefectisque distribuit.

4.—Huc accedebant¹³ decem et octo onerariae naves quae ex eo loco ab¹⁴ millibus passuum¹⁵ octo vento tenebantur. Naves¹⁶ quae vento tenebantur, quominus¹⁷ in eundem portum venire possent, equitibus distribuit.

5.—Reliquum exercitum Sabino et Cottae legatis in Menapios ducendum¹⁸ dedit.

6.—Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod¹⁹ satis esse arbitratur, portum tenere iussit.

NOTES.

1. See note 1 on Chap. XX.
2. The gerundive construction; App. 40.
3. Translate *qui* and subjunctive here by the infinitive with 'to'; literally 'who were to,' etc. App. 29, b.
4. Literally 'concerning the policy of the previous time'; freely 'for their previous policy.'
5. Translate the dat. by 'on.'
6. Translate by corresponding tense of indicative. The subjunctive is used here in quoting another's words.
7. Fut. perf. indie. where English would use the simple present.
8. Translate by English past tense; literally 'should have ordered.'
9. With *se*, the accus. and infin. construction; for *facturos esse*; App. 34.
10. With *imperat* = 'he demands,' trans. dat. by 'from' or 'of'; strictly it is the person to whom the order is given.
11. *Anteponeudas*, for *anteponeudas esse*, App. 34, c. Trans. the gerundive as in App. 41.

12. *Quot* here means 'as many as'; it is the subject of *esse*, while *satīs* is in the predicate.
 13. *Huc*, not 'to this place' but 'to these'; *accedeabant*, 'came,' i.e., 'were added.' Literal motion is impossible here.
 14. *Ab*, here meaning 'at a distance of.'
 15. Lit. 'thousands of paces'; for a neater rendering see App.2.d. and Vocabulary.
 16. *Naves*, here accus., object of *distribuit*.
 17. *Quominus...possent*, 'from being able'; more literally 'so that they should not be able.'
 18. *Ducendum*, 'to be led'; agreeing with *exercitum*.
 19. *Quod*, the relative pronoun, accus. subject of *esse*; not the conjunction.
-

PART II.—EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION FROM LATIN AT SIGHT.*

IV. 20.—1. Ex iis nationibus, quae ea loca incolunt, auxilia in Galliam mittuntur.

2. *Agros* Remorum vastant, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant.

3. Eorum locorum, ubi bellum gerunt, vada, portus, insulas noverunt.

4. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, qui in insula nati sunt.

5. Perspectis omnibus regionibus, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur.

6. Quibus in locis sit Caesar, reperiunt.

7. Multae sunt insulae, quarum pars magna a barbaris nationibus incolitur.

8. Quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent, reperiēbat.

9. Haec magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur.

10. Neque quisquam se adisse ad eam silvam dicit.

11. Initā hieme in Illyricum profectus est, quod eas nationes adire, et regiones cognoscere volebat.

12. Jam hieme confecta, ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocatus, ad hostem proficiscitur.

* Words printed in italics in the exercises have not previously occurred in the text in this sense, and are given in the vocabulary below.

All words not printed in italics in the vocabulary will occur again in the text with the same meaning.

ager.....	land.	mitto	send.
arma, orum	arms.	multus	many.
barbarus	uncivilized.	nascor, i, natus sum..	be born.
civitas	state.	quintus	fifth.
conficio, fectum.....	end.	revertor, i.....	return.
detineo	detain.	silva	forest.
dico.....	say.	tempestas.....	storm.
facio	do.	ubi	where.
ineo, ire, itum ..	begin.	vadum.....	shoal.
interior	central.	vasto.....	lay waste.
jam	now.	volo	wish.

21.—1. Una cum his legatis Cominius venit, quem Caesar in Britanniam praemiserat.

2. Celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama perfertur.

3. His rebus cognitis, equites revocari jubet, ipse ad naves revertitur.

4. His mandavit ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent.

5. Senones, quae est civitas magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar regem constituerat, interficiunt.

6. Cujus adventu ab hostibus cognito, magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt.

7. Se cum Romanis bellum gesturos dixerunt, neque cujusquam imperio obtemperaturos.

8. Itaque oratione ejus cognita, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat.

9. Omnes ad portum convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam trajectum esse cognoverat.

10. Mandubracius, Caesaris fidem secutus, ad eum in Galliam venerat.

11. Nuntios praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant, hortenturque ut in fide maneant.

12. De numero eorum omnia ab Remis explorata erant, quod quantam quisque multitudinem ad id bellum pollicitus esset cognoverant.

adventus ...	approach.	interficio ...	slay, kill.
commodus ..	suitable.	maneo	remain.
dico	Exercise 20.	numerus....	number.
doceo	inform.	nuntius	messenger.
eques	in plur., cavalry.	oratio	speech.
evoco	summon.	quisque	each.
fama.....	report.	revoco.....	recall.

22.—1. Omnibus his civitatibus obsides imperat, magnum numerum *militum* ad se celeriter adduci jubet.

2. Caesar, complures dies in his locis moratus, *equitatus* cogenicausa ab exercitu proficiscitur.

3. Is locus praesidio ab his tenebatur.

4. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus liberaliter *respondet*, obsidesque ad se adduci jubet.

5. Neque milites navibus transportare satis *tutum* esse arbitrabatur.

6. Omnia haec *sine consilio* accidere non possunt.

7. Suebi omnes in unum locum copias cogunt, atque eas nationes, quae *sub* imperio eorum sunt, hortantur ut auxilia mittant.

8. Ad eas res *conficiendus* hoc tempus sibi satis esse existimant.

9. Interim hostium copiae ex Arvernīs equitesque qui Galliae erant imperati conveniunt. Magno horum coacto numero, *convocat* praefectos equitum.

10. Priusquam essent majores eo coactae copiae, *dimicare* volebat.

11. Labienus, hostium cognito consilio, *sperat* fore *aliquam dimicandi* facultatem.

12. His rebus *confectis* in Aeduos proficiscitur, civitatemque recipit. Eo legati ab Arvernīs missi quae imperasset se facturos pollicentur.

13. Quattuor legiones in Senones Labieno ducendas dedit; sex ipse in Arvernos duxit. *Equitatus* partem illi *attribuit*, partem sibi reliquit.

aliquis.....*some.*

attribuo.....*assign.*

conficio*complete.*

convoco*summon.*

dimico.....*fight.*

equitatus*cavalry.*

miles.....*soldier.*

respondeo*answer.*

sine*without.*

spero*hope.*

sub*under.*

tutus.....*safe.*

23.—1. Itaque dies circiter octo in eo loco moratus, idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere naves jubet.

2. Galli majores copias, quae *nondum* convenerant, expectabant.

3. Omnes colles et loca superiora ab exercitu tenebantur.

4. In eum locum, *unde* erant egressi, reverti *coeperunt*.

5. Caesar non exspectare *statuit*, dum in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

6. Tribuni militum non magnum in re militari usum habebant.

7. Ex litore *aliquos* ex navi egredientes conspexerunt.

8. Nutu *vocibusque* hostes vocare *coeperunt*; neque quisquam eorum progredi ausus est.

9. Caesar, idoneum locum nactus, legatis quid fieri velit ostendit; monet ut *contineant* milites, *ne longius* progrediantur.

10. *Instructus est* exercitus, *magis* ut loci natura, *quam* ut rei militaris ratio postulabat.

11. Legatis convocatis, hortatus ut ea quae imperasset celeriter administrarent, naves equitibus Romanis distribuit; et prima vigilia quattuor millia passuum progredi, ibique se exspectare jubet.

12. Quod non *longius* hostes *aberant quam* quo telum adigi posset, signum dedit.

absum.....*be distant.*

aliquisExercise 22.

coepiperfect, begun.

contineorestrain.

instruo.....draw up.

longefar.

magis.....more, rather.

nelest.

nondum...not yet.

quam....than.

quo.....the distance to which.

statuo...determine.

unde....from which.

voxcry.

24.—1. In hostem tela *universi* conjiciunt, neque dant progrediendi facultatem.

2. His rebus cognitis, Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequatur omnibus copiis.

3. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas ostendimus; multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant.

4. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae *ferebant* onera, nostri de navibus desiluerunt.

5. Nostri *simul* in arido constiterunt, in hostes *impetum* fecerunt.

6. *Tantae* multitudinis *adventu* perterriti, Germanos *transire* prohibebant.

7. Hostes, notis omnibus *valis*, incitatis equis, impeditos *aloriebantur*.

8. Eo cum venisset, summo militum studio circiter mille ejus generis naves *invenit instructas*.

9. *Novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris, hostes per medios audacissime pererrupunt.*

10. Neque, cum tanta multitudo tela conjiceret, in muro consistendi cuiquam erat facultas.

adorior	attack.	murus	wall.
adventus	approach.	novus	new.
facio	make.	perrumpo . . .	break through.
fero	bear.	simul	as soon as.
impetus	attack.	tantus	so great.
instruo	equip.	transeo	cross.
invenio	find.	universus . . .	all.
medius	midst.	vadum	Exercise 20.

25.—1. *Nova atque inusitata specie permoti, legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt.*

2. *Uno interfecto, reliquos paulum propellit.*

3. *Alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciebant.*

4. *Ubi Crassus animadvertit, hostes castris satis praesidii relinquere, non cunctandam existimavit.*

5. *Equestribus proeliis, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removerunt, saepe ex equis desiliunt.*

6. *Labienu milites cohortatus ut ipsum Caesarem adesse existimarent, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, dat signum proelii.*

7. *Paulum a castris progressus milites ab hostibus premi et ex omnibus partibus tela conjici animadvertit.*

8. *L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum projecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans interficitur.*

9. “Habetis,” inquit, “milites, facultatem quam petivistis; praestate eandem nobis virtutem quam saepe imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse existimate.”

adsum	be present.	novus	Exercise 24.
alius	other.	pars	direction.
aquilifer	eagle-bearer.	pax	peace.
castra, orum . . .	camp.	peto	seek.
equester	cavalry.	premo	press hard.
fortiter	bravely.	pro	before.
impetus	Exercise 24.	saepe	often.
interficio	“ 21.	sustineo	withstand.
intra	within.	vallum	rampart.

26.—1. Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, reppulerunt, neque consistendi aut ex *essedis* desiliendi facultatem dederunt.

2. Cum acerrime pugnaretur, *subito* sunt Aedui *visi* a latere aperto.

3. Reperiebat Caesar eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

4. Laborantibus suis Germanos equites submittit. Eorum impetum Galli *sustinere* non potuerunt.

5. At hostes, ubi nostros conspexerunt, impetu facto celeriter ordines perturbaverunt.

6. Id cum animadvertisset Crassus tertiam cohortem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

7. Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt ut *spatium* tela conjiciendi non daretur.

8. Omnia fere superiora loca multitudine hostium completa conspiciuntur.

9. Repulsis hostibus, eo *quo* Labienum miserat *contendit*; equitum partem se sequi, partem ab tergo hostes adoriri jubet.

10. Quibus ex navibus cum essent *expositi* milites circiter trecenti, atque in *castra* *contenderent*, Morini magno suorum numero circumsteterunt, atque arma *ponere* jusserunt.

11. Pollicitus est quaecumque bella Caesar geri vellet se *confecturum*.

12. Hostes impeditos nostri in *flumine* adorti magnum eorum numerum *interfecerunt*; reliquos audacissime *transire* conantes, multitudine eorum reppulerunt; primos qui *transierant*, equitatu *circumvenios* interficiunt.

castra Exercise 25.

circumvenio surround.

conficio bring to an end.

conor attempt.

contendo hasten.

essedum chariot.

expono land.

flumen river.

interficio Exercise 21.

pono lay down.

quo to which.

spatium time.

subito suddenly.

sustineo Exercise 25.

transeo cross.

video see.

27.—1. Quibus rebus permoti, Menapii legatos ad eum pacis petendae causa mittunt.

2. Veneti auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones est, arcessunt.

3. Naves decem et octo, de quibus supra demonstratum est, ex superiore portu solverunt.

4. Magnus ibi numerus *pecoris* repertus est, multique Britanni in fuga sunt comprehensi atque *interfecti*.

5. *Postridie* Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex *terrore* ac fuga reciperent, in *fines* Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit.

6. Cum *meridies* appropinquare *videretur*, ad ea castra quae supra demonstravimus *contendit*; eodem tempore equitatus et reliquae copiae *pro castris* sese ostendere coeperunt.

7. Maritima pars Britanniae ab iis incolitur qui belli inferendi causa ex continenti *transierunt* et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros *colere* coeperunt.

8. Caesar dixit bello superatos esse Arvernos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset.

9. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus pacem petentibus liberaliter *respondet*, obsidesque ad se adduci jubet.

10. Interim ii, qui ad *alteram* partem *oppidi*, ut supra demonstravimus, convenerant, praemissis equitibus magno *cursu* eo *contenderunt*.

11. Hoc facto proelio, Caesar sibi legatos non audiendos arbitrabatur ab iis qui, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent.

12. Quae ipse intellegat, quae civites queratur, ostendit.

alter.....	<i>the other.</i>	oppidum.....	<i>town.</i>
castra.....	Exercise 25.	pecus.....	<i>cattle.</i>
colo.....	<i>cultivate.</i>	postridie.....	<i>the next day.</i>
contendo..	Exercise 26.	pro.....	Exercise 25.
cursus.....	<i>speed.</i>	respondeo....	" 22.
finis.....	<i>in plur., territory.</i>	terror.....	<i>alarm.</i>
interficio..	Exercise 21.	transeo.....	Exercise 26.
meridies..	<i>noon.</i>	videor.....	<i>seem.</i>

28.—1. Longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportaverat, aestus complebat.

2. His rebus permoti, *constituerunt* cum proximis civitatibus pacem et *amicitiam* confirmare.

3. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus, paulo post *mediam* noctem naves solvit; ex iis onerariae duae portum capere non potuerunt.

4. *Media* circiter nocte, vento *intermisso* cursum non tenuit.

5. Labieno in continenti cum tribus legionibus relicto, ut quae in Gallia *gererentur* cognosceret, ipse cum quinque legionibus naves solvit.

6. Ipse *post paulo* egressus cum tribus legionibus eum locum petit *quò* naves convenire jusserat.

7. Septimo die, maximo coorto vento, *ferrentes glandes* fundis jacere coeperunt.

8. Ibi cognoscit naves tempestate *rejectas* cursum tenere non potuisse, atque eodem unde erant profectae revertisse.

9. Equites a Q. Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt qui nuntiarent superiore nocte, maxima coorta tempestate, omnes fere naves *afflictas* atque in litus *ejectas* esse.

10. Ex iis navibus, quae ex continenti ad eum remittebantur, paucae locum ceperunt, reliquae fere omnes *rejectae* sunt.

amicitia.....*friendship.*

affligo.....*shatter.*

constituo.....*determine.*

ejicio.....*cast up.*

ferrens.....*red-hot.*

gero.....*do.*

glans.....*ball.*

intermitto....in pass., *cease.*

medius.....*mid.*

post.....*afterwards.*

quo.....Exercise 26.

rejicio.....*drive back.*

29.—1. Principes Britanniae equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegebant.

2. Nostri, cum undique *premerentur*, multis amissis dejecti sunt loco.

3. Caesar legatis imperat ut quam plurimas hieme naves *aedificandas*, *veteresque* reficiendas curarent.

4. Magnis coactis copiis, Labienum cum una legione, quae in eorum *finibus* hiemaverat, adoriri *parabant*.

5. Amissis circiter quadraginta navibus, reliquae tamen refici possunt.

6. Acciderat ut subito Galli belli *renovandi* consilium *caperent*.

7. *Minuente* aestu, naves in vadis afflictabantur.

8. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut milites ab signis *discederent*.

9. Magno coorto *imbre*, Caesar non inutilem hanc ad *capiendum* consilium tempestatem arbitratus, quid fieri velit ostendit.

10. Ac *sic* accidit ut, ex tanto navium numero, neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla navis *desuleretur*.

11. Ad hos omnes *casus* provisæ erant *praesidia* quæ ex ipsa *provincia* coacta erant.

aedifico	build.	minuo	ebb.
capio	decide on.	paro	make ready.
casus	emergency.	premo	Exercise 25.
desidero	lose.	provincia	province.
discedo	depart, leave.	renovo	renew.
finis	Exercise 27.	sic	so.
imber	rainstorm.	vetus (eris)	old.

30.—1. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causa C. Arpineius.

2. Ibi Ceutrones, locis superioribus *occupatis*, itinere exercitum prohibere *conantur*.

3. Labienum legatum cum iis legionibus quas ex Britannia *reducerat*, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit.

4. Dum paucos dies *commeatus* causa moratur, tantus subito *timor* omnem exercitum *occupavit*, ut omnium *animos* perturbaret.

5. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum *traducere conati* sunt, ut agros Remorum *popularentur* *commeatuque* nostris prohiberent.

6. Subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, bellum inferri Allobrogibus jubet.

7. *Perfacile* est factu, *commeatu* intercluso, Romanos transire prohibere.

8. Non *adeo* est imperitus *rerum* ut his copiis populum Romanum superari posse confidat.

9. Helvetii, cum legiones a *praesidio* et *impedimentis* intercludi posse confiderent, *commutato* consilio, nostros lacessere coeperunt.

adeo	so.	perfacilis	very easy.
animus	heart.	populor	lay waste.
commuto	change.	reduco	lead back.
conor	Exercise 26.	res	affairs, the world.
iter	marching.	timor	panic.
occupo	seize.	traduco	lead across.

31.—1. Tercio die, missis ex *oppido* legatis de *deditione*, arma conferri, obsides dari jubet.

2. Omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit.

3. Castris *munitis*, quae ad *oppugnandum* usui erant, comparare coepit.

4. Obsidibus datis omnibusque armis ex *oppido* collatis, ab eo loco in *fines* Ambianorum profectus est.

5. Ex inferiore loco non satis commode tela adigi poterant.

6. Eo cum venissent, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta esse cognovit, Germanos *invitados* uti ab Rheno discederent.

7. Quae res efficiebat ut *commeatus* ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus sine *periculo* ad eum *portari* possent.

8. Rebello facta post *deditionem*, *defectio* datis obsidibus, tot civitatum conjuratio Caesarem ad bellum incitabant.

deditio *surrender.*

defectio *revolt.*

finis Exercise 27.

invito *invite.*

munio *fortify.*

oppidum Exercise 27.

oppugno *assault.*

periculum *danger.*

porto *carry.*

tot *so many.*

32.—1. Principes Galliae hortari coepit uti in continenti remanerent.

2. Acerrime *resistebant* nec dabat suspicionem fugae quisquam.

3. His initis consiliis *oppida muniunt*, frumentum ex agris in *oppida* comportant, naves in Venetiam quam plurimas cogunt.

4. Polliciti sunt nihil se *contra* Sequanos consilii inituros.

5. Quo ex oppido legati ad eum venerunt *oratum* ut sibi ignosceret.

6. Germanorum consuetudo est, quicumque bellum inferunt, resistere.

7. Equites omnes, quos ex omni *provincia* coegerat, praemittit qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant.

8. Dispersis in *opere* nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae *evolaverunt*, et in nostros impetum fecerunt.

9. Dixit nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese *diutius* sustinere non posse.

10. Nullum potest ab perterritis ac dispersis *periculum* accidere.

11. Equites hostium essedariiue, *imprudentibus* nostris atque occupatis in *munitione* castrorum, subito se ex silvis *ejecerunt*, impetumque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris *collocati*, acriter pugnauerunt.

colloco	<i>station.</i>	munitio	<i>fortification.</i>
contra	<i>in opposition to.</i>	oppidum	Exercise 27.
diutius	<i>longer.</i>	opus	<i>work.</i>
ejicio	<i>w. se, rush out.</i>	oro	<i>beg.</i>
evolo	<i>rush out.</i>	periculum	Exercise 31.
imprudens, <i>off</i>	<i>one's guard.</i>	provincia	" 29.
munio	Exercise 31.	resisto	<i>resist.</i>

33.—1. Germani una in parte confertis turmis impetum fecerunt, eosque propulerunt.

2. Mittit ad eas civitates quas superioribus annis *pacaverat*, equitesque ab his arcessit, et pedites qui inter eos proeliari consueverant.

3. Quod hosti appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones *expeditus* ducebat; post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocaverat; *inde* duae legiones praesidio impedimentis erant.

4. *Equestribus* proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere *vestigio assuefecerunt*, ad quos se celeriter recipiunt.

5. Ut hostibus *timoris* det suspicionem, majore strepitu quam populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra *moveri* jubet.

6. Toto hoc in genere pugnae intellectum est nostros propter *gravitatem* armorum *minus aptos* esse ad hujus generis hostem.

7. Caesar Rhenum transire *constituit* quod auxilia *contra* se Treveris Germani miserant, ac ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet.

8. Id cum Piso, qui *jam* proelio excesserat, animadvertisset, incitato equo se hostibus *obtulit* atque interfectus est.

9. Intellectum est equites nostros magno cum *periculo dimicare*, quod hostes ex essedis desilirent et pedibus *dispari* proelio *contenderent*.

aptus	<i>suited.</i>	inde	<i>next.</i>
assuefacio	<i>train.</i>	jam	<i>by this time.</i>
constituo	<i>determine.</i>	minus	<i>not very well.</i>
contendo	<i>fight.</i>	moveo	<i>break up.</i>
contra	Exercise 32.	offero	<i>present.</i>
dimico	" 22.	paco	<i>subdue.</i>
dispar	<i>unequal.</i>	periculum	Exercise 31.
equester	Exercise 25.	saepe	" 25.
expeditus	<i>in light marching order.</i>	timor	" 30.
gravitas	<i>weight.</i>	vestigium	<i>spot.</i>

34.—1. Equites nostri *cupidius* hostes *insecuti*, alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt.

2. Crassus, quod in his locis *inopia* frumenti erat, tribunos militum complures in finitimas civitates frumenti causa dimisit.

3. Ad Germanos *fama* perfertur *diripi* Eburones atque omnes ad praedam evocari.

4. Hac re statim Caesar cognita, quod, qua *de* causa hostes discederent, nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit.

5. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad *flumen* progressi, ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt.

6. Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad omnes qui sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas *manus* cogunt.

7. Legatos monet ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut *spe* praedae longius progrediantur.

8. Perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, *manus* erat nulla quae timorem *afferret*.

9. Dimittit ad finitimas civitates nuntios Caesar; omnes *evocat spe* praedae ad *diripiendos* Eburones. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

10. At ii qui in praesidio contra castra Labieni erant relict, cum proelium commissum audivissent, subsidio suis venerunt.

11. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac subito omnibus portis *eruptio* facta, neque cognoscendi quid fieret neque sui recipiendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt.

12. Dum arma conferuntur nocte intermissa, circiter hominum millia sex, timore perterriti, e castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum *contenderunt*.

13. Helvetii timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimabant, quod pridie superioribus locis *occupatis*, proelium non commisissent.

affero *cause*.
contendo *hasten*.
cupide *eagerly*.
de *for*.
diripio *plunder*.
eruptio *sally*.
evoco Exercise 21.
fama *rumor*.

flumen Exercise 26.
inopia *scarcity*.
insequor *follow up*.
manus *band, force*.
occupo Exercise 30.
pridie *the day before*.
spes *hope*.
sub *under*.

35.—1. In iis locis L. Valerius legatus exercitu pulso, impedimentis amissis, interfectus est.

2. Eodem tempore equites nostri, peditesque qui cum iis una fuerant, qui primo hostium impetu pulsi erant, cum se in castra recipere, hostibus occurrunt.

3. Caesar paucos dies in eorum *finibus* moratus, omnibus aedificiis incensis frumentisque *succisis*, in *fines* Ubiorum pervenit atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus est, si ab Suebis premerentur.

4. Etsi sine ullo periculo legionis cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non *putabat*.

5. *Repente* post tergum equitatus *cernitur*; cohortes aliae appropinquant. Hostes terga vertunt: *fugientibus* equites nostri occurrunt.

6. *Oppidum*, quod a se teneri non posse judicabant, ne Romanis esset usui, incenderunt.

7. Si qua in parte nostri laborare aut gravius premi videbantur, ibi aciem constitui jubebat.

8. Huc magno cursu *contenderunt*, ut quam *minimum* temporis ad se *colligendos* armandosque Romanis daretur.

<i>cerno</i>	<i>perceive.</i>	<i>minimus</i> . . .	<i>superl. of parvus, little.</i>
<i>colligo</i>	<i>recover.</i>	<i>oppidum</i> . . .	<i>Exercise 27.</i>
<i>contendo</i> . . .	<i>Exercise 34.</i>	<i>puto</i>	<i>think.</i>
<i>finis</i>	“ 27.	<i>repente</i> . . .	<i>suddenly.</i>
<i>fugio</i>	<i>flee.</i>	<i>succido</i> . . .	<i>cut down.</i>

36.—1. Dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco moratus est, quod ventus navigationem impediēbat.

2. Erant Menapii propinqui, qui *uni* ex Gallia de pace ad Caesarem legatos *numquam* miserant.

3. Nullo hoste prohibente, incolumem legionem in Allobroges *perduxit*, ibique hiemavit.

4. Media circiter nocte vento *intermisso* cursum non tenuit, et longius delatus est aestu.

5. Ne anni tempore a navigatione *excluderetur*, quod aequinoctium *suberat* necessario solvit.

6. Militum pars, virtute submotis hostibus, incolumis in castra pervenit.

<i>excludo</i>	<i>cut off.</i>	<i>perduco</i>	<i>bring.</i>
<i>intermitto</i> . . .	<i>Exercise 28.</i>	<i>subsum</i>	<i>be near.</i>
<i>numquam</i> . . .	<i>never.</i>	<i>unus</i>	<i>alone.</i>

37.—1. Caesar, exposito exercitu, ubi ex *captivis* cognovit quo in loco hostium copiae *consedissent*, tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit.

2. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt.

3. Aedui, cum se ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt *rogatum* auxilium.

4. Germani, post tergum clamore audito, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abjectis signisque militaribus relictis, se ex castris *ejecerunt*.

5. Ex iis navibus, quae expositis militibus ad eum remittebantur, paucae locum ceperunt.

6. Posteaquam principes, his rebus adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti, ad Caesarem venerunt, *veritus* ne ab omnibus *desereretur*, legatos ad Caesarem mittit.

7. Quos in conspectu Galliae interficere *veretur*, hos in Britannia *necabit*.

8. Hoc proelio nuntiato, Suebi domum reverti coeperunt: quos Ubii, qui ea loca incolunt, *insecuti*, magnum ex iis numerum occiderunt.

9. *Facile* se loci natura *oppidum* defensuros dicunt, quod ex omnibus fere partibus *palude* circumdatum unum habeat aditum.

10. Belgae *contra* populum Romanum *conjurabant*, quod *verebantur* ne, omni pacata Gallia, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur.

11. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae praesidio impeditis fuerant, proelio nuntiato cursu incitato, in colle alio hostibus conspiciuntur, et Labienus ex loco superiore quae res in nostris castris gererentur *conspicatus*, decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit.

<i>captivus</i> ...	<i>prisoner.</i>	<i>facile</i>	<i>easily.</i>
<i>conjuro</i>	<i>form a league.</i>	<i>insequor</i>	<i>pursue.</i>
<i>consido</i>	<i>encamp.</i>	<i>neco</i>	<i>put to death.</i>
<i>conspicor</i>	<i>observe.</i>	<i>oppidum</i>	<i>Exercise 27.</i>
<i>contra</i>	<i>against.</i>	<i>palus</i>	<i>marsh.</i>
<i>desero</i>	<i>abandon.</i>	<i>rogo</i>	<i>ask.</i>
<i>ejicio</i>	<i>Exercise 32.</i>	<i>vereor</i>	<i>fear.</i>

38.—1. Palus erat non magna *inter* nostrum atque hostium exercitum,

2. Interim nuntiatur omnes eorum milites in potestate Caesaris teneri.

3. Hac audita pugna maxima pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso *dedidit*, obsidesque ultro misit; paucae nationes, anni tempore *confisae*, quod hiems *suberat*, hoc facere neglexerunt.

4. Illi celeriter adventu Caesaris cognito, impedimenta sua in silvas abdiderunt, copias omnes in loco aperto *instruxerunt*.

5. Complures tribuni militum nihil temere *agendum* neque ex hibernis discedendum existimabant.

6. Cum jam *pecus* atque impedimenta hostium ab nostris tenebantur et ipsi densiores silvas peterent, *ejusmodi* sunt tempestates consecutae uti necessario Caesar exercitum reduceret et in hibernis collocaret.

7. Ut postea Caesar ex *captivis* cognovit, cum magnae manus hostium eo convenissent, multitudo navium perterritae a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

8. Navibus amissis, Veneti neque quo se reciperent neque *quemadmodum oppida* defenderent, habebant.

9. Ob eas res ex litteris Caesaris dierum quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod *ante* id tempus accidit *nulli*.

<i>ago</i>do.	<i>inter</i>between.
<i>ante</i>before.	<i>manus</i>Exercise 34.
<i>captivus</i> . . .Exercise 37.	<i>nulli</i>used as dat. of <i>nemo</i> .
<i>confisus</i> . . . <i>trusting</i> .	<i>oppidum</i>Exercise 27.
<i>dedo</i> <i>surrender</i> .	<i>pecus</i>“ 27.
<i>ejusmodi</i> . . .of such a sort.	<i>quemadmodum</i> . .how, by what means.
<i>instruo</i>Exercise 23.	<i>subsum</i>Exercise 36.

Bk. V. 1.—His rebus gestis, cum multis de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, atque ita in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, *subitum* bellum in Gallia coortum est. Ejus belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus cum legione septima *proximus* mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemabat. Is, quod in his locis *inopia* frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimas civitates frumenti causa dimisit; quorum est T. Terrasidius missus in Esubios, M. Trebius in Curiosolites, Q. Velanius cum T. Silio in Venetos. Haec civitas

summam habet auctoritatem omnis orae maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt, et paucis portibus *interjectis* quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere qui eo mari uti consuerunt, habent *vectigales*. Hi *retinent* Silium atque Velanium, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso *dedidissent*, *reciperaturos* existimabant. Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti, eadem de causa Trebium Terrasidiumque *retinent*, et celeriter missis legatis inter se *conjurant*.

<i>conjuro</i> . . . Exercise IV. 37.	<i>quoque</i> also.
<i>dedo</i> " 38.	<i>recipero</i> recover.
<i>inopia</i> " 34.	<i>retineo</i> imprison.
<i>interjicio</i> . . pass., <i>come at intervals</i> .	<i>subitus</i> sudden.
<i>proximus</i> . w. acc. <i>very near</i> .	<i>vectigalis</i> tributary.

2.—1. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat.

2. Reliquas naves paratas ad navigandum atque omniibus rebus instructas invenit. His deductis, quod captivorum magnum numerum habebat, duobus *commeatibus* exercitum reportare *instituit*.

3. Brutum classi Gallicisque navibus quas ex Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jusserat, praeficit, et, *cum primum* posset, in Venetos proficisci jubet. Ipse eo reliquis copiis contendit.

4. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, interficere publico consilio *conati*, domo expulerunt, et, missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendi causa legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire jussisset, non paruerunt.

5. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis *contendit*, ut eam partem insulae caperet, *qua* optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat.

6. Tum Labienus, tanta *rerum* commutatione facta, aliud sibi *capiendum* consilium intellegebat, neque jam ut proelio hostes lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum reduceret, *cogitabat*.

<i>cipio</i> Exercise IV. 29.	<i>cum primum</i> . . . as soon as ; lit.?
<i>cogito</i> plan.	<i>egressus</i> landing.
<i>commeatus</i> . . trip.	<i>instituo</i> undertake.
<i>conor</i> Exercise IV. 26.	<i>qua</i> where.
<i>contendo</i> . . . strive.	<i>res</i> fortune.

3.—Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia, ut supra demonstravimus, litteris Labieni *certior* fiebat omnes Belgas contra populum Romanum *conjurare*. His litteris *commotus* Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas *conscripsit* et Q. Pedium legatum misit, qui in ulteriorem Galliam duceret. Mandat Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant, seque de his rebus *certiorem* faciant. Hi omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum *conduci*. Tum castra *moret* diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit. Eo cum de *improviso* venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos miserunt qui dicerent se *suaque* omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque se cum Belgis reliquis contra populum Romanum *conjurasse*, paratosque esse et obsides dare et *imperata* facere; reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque sese cum his *conjunxisse*.

certiorem facio...*inform*.

commoveo*disturb*.

convoco*assemble*.

conjungo... ..*ally*.

conjuroExercise IV.37.

conscribo*enlist*.

imperatum ..*command, bidding*.

de improvise..*unexpectedly*.

moveo*shift*.

sua*their possessions*.

4.—1. Omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, perturbantur.

2. Gravius fert, quod merito populi Romani eae res non acciderunt.

3. Dum hac in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis, quas a Caesar acceperat, in fines Venellorum pervenit. His *praeerat* Viridovix atque iis omnibus civitatibus, quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coegerat.

4. Itaque cohortatus Aeduos de *supportando* commeatus, legatos praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant hortenturque, ut in *fide* maneant atque hostium impetum magno *animo* sustineant.

5. Invenit Nervios eos qui per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum locum *conjecisse*, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

6. Tum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, dixit esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; ab his nostra consilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus nuntiari.

7. Caesar, principibus *cujusque* civitatis ad se evocatis, magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit.

8. Tantam sibi jam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem *comparaverat* ut undique gratiam atque amicitiam privatim peterent.

9. Interim ex consuetudine cotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra *accedit*, atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela conjiciunt et nostros ad pugnam evocant.

10. Galliae totius *factiones* sunt duae; harum alterius principatum tenent Aedui, alterius Arverni. Hi cum de *potentatu* inter se multos annos contenderent, ab Arvernīs Germani arcesuntur.

11. Equitibus discedentibus mandat ut suam *quisque* eorum civitatem adeat, omnesque, qui per aetatem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cogant.

12. Quod Divitiaci summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam *fidem* cognoverat, verebatur ne animum *offenderet*. Itaque, priusquam quicquam *conaretur*, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet, et cum eo colloquitur.

accedo	<i>draw near.</i>	fides	<i>loyalty.</i>
animus	<i>courage.</i>	offendo	<i>wound.</i>
comparo	<i>gain.</i>	potentatus	<i>supremacy.</i>
conjicio	<i>put.</i>	praesum	<i>be at head of.</i>
conor	Exercise IV. 26.	quisque	<i>each.</i>
factio	<i>party.</i>	supporto	<i>bring up.</i>

5.—Hoc inito consilio totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labienum in Treveros mittit duasque legiones ad eum proficisci jubet; ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi nulla coacta manu in silvas paludesque *conjungunt*, suaeque eodem conferunt. Caesar celeriter effectis *pontibus* adit *tripertito*, aedificia *ricosque* incendit. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii legatos ad eum pacis petendae causa mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptis hostium se *habiturum numero* confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem aut ejus legatos finibus suis *recepissent*. His constitutis rebus Commius Atrebatem cum equitatu *custodis* loco in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treveros proficiscitur.

confugio	<i>flee.</i>	pons	<i>bridge.</i>
custos	<i>guard.</i>	recipio	<i>receive.</i>
habeo	<i>regard.</i>	tripertito	<i>in three divisions.</i>
numero	<i>in the light, as.</i>	ricus	<i>village.</i>

6.—1. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad ejus propinquos a Treveris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et *pecuniam* polliceri non *desistunt*. Cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ultiores *temptant*.

2. Ipse imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides, diemque huic rei constituit. Omnes equites, quindecim millia numero, celeriter convenire jubet; peditatu, quem ante habuerat, se fore *contentum* dicit.

3. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus ne civitas deficeret, L. Plancum cum legione celeriter in Carnutes proficisci jubet ibique hiemare, principesque, a quibus cognoverat Tasgetium interfectum, comprehensos ad se mittere.

4. Repperit Dumnorigem esse magna apud plebem propter *liberalitatem* gratia, cupidum rerum novarum, neque *solum domi*, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates plurimum valere.

5. Crebrae litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur; quorum pars, comprehensa, in conspectu nostrorum militum necabatur.

6. Arpineius et Junius quae audierunt, ad legatos deferunt. Illi *repentina* re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, tamen non neglegenda existimabant.

7. Dixit hoc esse Galliae commune consilium, ne qua legio hibernis auxilio venire possent.

<i>contentus</i>	<i>satisfied.</i>	<i>pecunia</i>	<i>money.</i>
<i>desisto</i>	<i>cease.</i>	<i>repentinus</i>	<i>sudden.</i>
<i>domi</i>	<i>at home.</i>	<i>solum</i>	<i>only.</i>
<i>liberalitas</i>	<i>generosity.</i>	<i>tempto</i>	<i>try.</i>

7.—Helvetii jam per fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros *populabantur*. Aedui cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt qui peterent auxilium: *paene* in conspectu exercitus nostri agros vastari, *oppida expugnari*. Eodem tempore Allobroges, qui trans flumen *vicos* habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt atque demonstrant sese non facile ab *oppidis* vim hostium prohibere. Quibus rebus adductus, Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnes *fortunae* Gallorum *consumerentur*. Itaque ut copias Helvetiorum consequi posset, *pontem* faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii *repentino* ejus adventu *commoti*, legatos ad eum mittunt.

<i>commoreo</i>	<i>alarm.</i>	<i>paene</i>	<i>almost.</i>
<i>consumo</i>	<i>destroy.</i>	<i>pons</i>	Exercise 5.
<i>expugno</i>	<i>take by storm.</i>	<i>populus</i>	“ IV. 30.
<i>fortunae</i>	<i>possessions.</i>	<i>repentinus</i>	“ 6.
<i>oppidum</i>	Exercise IV. 27.	<i>vici</i>	“ 5.

8.—1. Vorennum impeditum hostes circumsistunt. Huic *circumvento* fert subsidium Pulio, atque *ambo* incolumes, compluribus interfectis, sese *intra munitiones* recipiunt.

2. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit quae in castris Ciceronis gerantur, quantoque in periculo res sit.

3. Aduatuci, de quibus supra *scripsimus*, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nervii venirent, hac pugna nuntiata domum reverterunt.

4. Dicunt facile esse Caesarem ab exercitu intercludere; quod neque legiones audeant absente imperatore ex hibernis egredi, neque imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire possit.

5. Itaque re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea nominatim evocatis, in Sontiatum fines exercitum duxit. Cujus adventu cognito Sontiates magnis copiis coactis equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere nostros adorti sunt.

6. Tanta sunt tempestates consecutae uti *opus* necessario intermitteretur.

7. Aegre *portas* nostri tuentur; reliquos aditus locus ipse defendit.

8. Caesar ubi intellexit se hostibus nocere non posse, statuit expectandam classem.

9. Itaque vastatis regionibus duas legiones in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senonum finibus in hibernis collocavit, frumentoque proviso, in Italiam, ut consuevit, ad conventus *agendos* profectus est.

ago *hold*.

ambo *both*.

circumvenio. Exercise IV. 26.

intra " IV. 25.

munitio ... Exercise IV. 32.

opus " IV. 32.

porta *gate*.

scribo *write*.

9.—Interim ab Ubiis cognoscit Suebos omnes in unum locum copias cogere atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, mandare ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. His cognitis rebus rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum *deligit*; Ubiis imperat ut *pecora* deducant suaeque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, *sperans* barbaros atque imperitos homines, inopia frumenti adductos, alieno loco proelium commissuros. Postquam autem *comperit* Suebos, cum omnibus suis copiis quas coegissent, sese in silvas recepisse, constituit non progredi longius; sed ne omnino metum reditus *tolleret*, praesidium cohortium duodecim *pontis* tuendi causa *ponit* magnisque eum locum munitionibus *firmit*. Ei loco praesidioque C. Volcatium praeficit.

<i>comperio</i> . . . <i>discover.</i>	<i>pono</i> <i>station.</i>
<i>deligo</i> <i>choose.</i>	<i>pons</i> <i>Exercise 5.</i>
<i>firmitas</i> <i>strengthen.</i>	<i>spero</i> <i>hope.</i>
<i>pecus</i> <i>Exercise IV. 27.</i>	<i>tollo</i> <i>take away.</i>

10.—1. Vercingetorix Caesarem subsequitur et locum castris *deligit* paludibus silvisque munitum.

2. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

3. Alii tela conjiciunt, alii testudine facta aggerem *exstruunt*.

4. Tandem Germani hostes loco *depellunt*; fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix cum reliquis copiis consederat, persequuntur compluresque interficiunt.

5. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis, easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus relinquit, ipse eodem unde *redierat* proficiscitur.

6. Vercingetorix his incommodis acceptis suos ad concilium convocat. Docet alia ratione esse bellum gerendum atque comatu Romanos prohibendos.

7. Huic mandat Germanos, si per vim navibus flumen transire *conentur*, prohibeat.

8. Omnibus *oppidis* desertis sua omnia in unum *oppidum* egregie natura munitum contulerunt.

<i>conor</i> <i>Exercise VI. 26.</i>	<i>oppidum</i> . . . <i>Exercise IV. 27.</i>
<i>deligo</i> “ 9.	<i>redeo</i> <i>return.</i>
<i>depello</i> <i>dislodge.</i>	<i>ubi</i> <i>Exercise IV. 20.</i>
<i>exstruo</i> <i>raise.</i>	<i>usque</i> <i>even, quite.</i>

11. His rebus celeriter coacto exercitu Vercingetorix Lucetrium, summae hominem *audaciae*, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Bituriges proficiscitur. Ejus adventu Bituriges ad Aeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittunt, qui subsidium *rogarent*, quo facilius hostium copias sustinere possent. Aedui de *consilio* legatorum, quos Caesar ibi reliquerat, copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flumen pervenissent quod Bituriges ab Aeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi morati neque flumen transire ausi domum revertuntur, legatisque nostris renuntiant se Biturigum *perfidiam* veritos revertisse. Bituriges eorum discessu statim se cum Vercingetorige conjungunt.

<i>audacia</i> <i>boldness.</i>	<i>perfidia</i> <i>treachery.</i>
<i>de consilio</i> <i>on the advice.</i>	<i>rogo</i> <i>ask for.</i>

12.—1. Interea Commius reliquique quibus summa imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle *occupato* mille passibus ab nostris munitionibus considunt. Postero die equitatu ex castris *educto*, omnem *planiciem* complent, peditesque in locis superioribus constituunt.

2. Belgae sunt orti a Germanis, Rhenumque traducti propter loci *fertilitatem* ibi *consecderunt*, Gallosque, qui ea loca incolebant, expulerunt.

3. Has regiones Menapii incolebant, et agros, aedificia *ricosque* habebant, sed tantae multitudinis Germanorum adventu perterriti, ex iis aedificiis quae trans flumen habuerant, *demi-graverunt* et Germanos transire prohibebant.

4. Germani ita dicebant, non esse fas superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

5. Caesar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit ne Helvetios frumento *jurarent*. Ipse paucis diebus intermissis cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

6. Commodissimum visum est C. Valerium ad eum mittere. Huic mandavit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognosceret et ad se *referret*.

7. His quam longissime possent progredi jussis, *pontem* reficere coepit. Celeriter effecto opere legionibusque traductis et loco castris idoneo delecto reliquas copias revocavit.

<i>consido</i>	<i>settle</i> .	<i>occupo</i>	Exercise IV. 30.
<i>demiagro</i>	<i>move away</i> .	<i>planicies</i>	<i>plain</i> .
<i>eduo</i>	<i>lead out</i> .	<i>pous</i>	Exercise 5.
<i>fertilitas</i>	<i>richness</i> .	<i>refero</i>	<i>report</i> .
<i>juvo</i>	<i>aid, supply</i> .	<i>vicus</i>	Exercise 4.

13.—1. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaenos montes et eam partem Oceani quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

2. Ipse ad bellum profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima atque a *ripis* Rheni finibusque Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet, millibusque amplius quingentis in longitudinem *pate*t, L. Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatu praemittit; sese confestim subsequi dicit.

<i>pateo</i>	<i>extend</i> .	<i>ripa</i>	<i>bank</i> .
------------------------	-----------------	-----------------------	---------------

14.—1. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. *Vita* omnis in *venationibus* atque in *studiis* rei militaris *consistit*; labori

ac *duritiae student*. Pellibus utuntur, magna corporis parte *nuda*. *Agriculturae non student*, majorque pars *victus* in lacte, caseo, carne *consistit*. *Hospitem violare fas non putant*; qui ad eos venerunt, ab injuria prohibent. Ac fuit tempus cum Germanos Galli virtute *superarent*, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum *colonius* mitterent.

2. Sueborum *gens* est longe maxima Germanorum omnium. Neque multum frumento, sed lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in *venationibus*; quae res, et *cibi* genere et cotidiana exercitatione, vires alit.

<i>agricultura</i> . . . <i>farming</i> .	<i>nudus</i> <i>bare</i> .
<i>caseus</i> <i>cheese</i> .	<i>studeo</i> <i>be devoted to</i> .
<i>cibus</i> <i>food</i> .	<i>studium</i> <i>pursuit</i> .
<i>colonia</i> <i>colony</i> .	<i>supero</i> <i>surpass</i> .
<i>consisto</i> <i>consist</i> .	<i>venatio</i> <i>hunting</i> .
<i>duritia</i> <i>endurance</i> .	<i>victus</i> (4) <i>food</i> .
<i>gens</i> <i>tribe</i> .	<i>riolo</i> <i>harm</i> .
<i>hospes</i> <i>guest</i> .	<i>vita</i> <i>life</i> .

15.—Barbari nostros conspicati ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt. Nostri rei novitate perturbantur, atque alii *censent*, ut impetu facto celeriter perrumpant, alii ut in colle consistent. Hoc veteres non *probant* milites. Itaque inter se cohortati per medios hostes perrumpunt incolumesque omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsecuti equites eodem impetu, peditum virtute *serrantur*. At ii, qui in colle constiterant, neque in eo, quod *probaverant*, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque vim celeritatemque reliquorum *imitari* potuerunt, sed se in castra recipere *conati*, *iniquum* in locum progrediuntur. Centuriones fortissime pugnantes *concederunt*. Militum pars, horum virtute submotis hostibus, *praeter* spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris *circumventa perit*.

<i>censeo</i> <i>advise</i> .	<i>iniquus</i> <i>unfavorable</i> .
<i>circumvenio</i> . . . Exercise IV. 26.	<i>pereo</i> <i>perish</i> .
<i>concido</i> <i>fall</i> .	<i>praeter</i> <i>contrary to</i> .
<i>conor</i> Exercise IV. 26.	<i>probo</i> <i>favor</i> .
<i>imitor</i> <i>imitate</i> .	<i>servo</i> <i>save</i> .

16.—1. Postero die *procul* a castris hostes in collibus constituerunt, rarique se ostendere, et *lenius* quam *pridie* nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt.

2. Cum equitatus noster vastandi causa se in agros ejecerat,

essedarios ex silvis *emittebat*, et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum, cum iis confligebat.

3. Postero die hostium equitatus ad castra accedit, proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere jubet.

4. Simul et cursu et *spatio* pugnae defatigati, non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

5. Si legiones in provinciam arcesseret, se absente in itinere proelio dimicaturas intellegebat.

6. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus in *acie* dimicare non ausus, exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit.

7. *Diuturnitate* pugnae hostes *defessi* proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant.

<i>acies</i>	<i>line of battle.</i>	<i>leniter</i>	<i>with little vigor.</i>
<i>defessus</i>	<i>exhausted.</i>	<i>pridie</i>	Exercise IV. 34.
<i>diuturnitas</i>	<i>length.</i>	<i>procul</i>	<i>at a distance.</i>
<i>emitto</i>	<i>send out.</i>	<i>spatium</i>	<i>length.</i>

17.—Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope *exacta* jam aestas erat, tamen, quod omni Gallia pacata Morini Menapiique *supererant* qui in armis essent neque ad cum unquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse eo exercitum *adluxit*. Illi, quod intellegebant maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, *continentesque* silvas ac paludes habebant, eo se suaeque omnia *contulerunt*. Ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset, castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in *opere* nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae *evolaverunt*, et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma *ceperunt*, eosque in silvas repulerunt et compluribus interfectis, longius *impeditis* locis secuti paucos ex suis *deperdiderunt*.

<i>adduco</i>	<i>lead.</i>	<i>erolo</i>	Exercise IV. 32.
<i>capio</i>	<i>take up, seize.</i>	<i>exigo</i>	<i>spend.</i>
<i>confero</i>	<i>remove.</i>	<i>impeditus</i>	<i>rough.</i>
<i>continens</i>	<i>unbroken.</i>	<i>opus</i>	Exercise IV. 32.
<i>deperdo</i>	<i>lose.</i>	<i>supersum</i>	<i>remain.</i>

18.—1. His copiis Vercassivellaunum praeficiunt. Ille ex castris prima vigilia egressus post montem se *occultavit*, militesque ex nocturno labore sese *reficere* jussit. Cum jam meridies appropinquare videretur, ad ea castra, quae supra demonstravimus, contendit; eodemque tempore equitatus ad munitiones accedere et reliquae copiae pro castris sese ostendere coeperunt.

2. Flumen Axonam, quod est in finibus Remorum, exercitum traduxit, atque ibi castra *posuit*. Quae res latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis *muniebat*.

3. In vado fluminis *deprehensus*, Indutiomarus interficitur caputque ejus refertur in castra. Hac re cognita omnes Eburo-num et Nerviorum, quae convenerant, copiae discedunt.

4. Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque *procurrerunt*, ut spatium *pila* in hostes conjiciendi non daretur. *Rejectis pilis, comminus gladiis* pugnatum est.

5. Cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem Helvetiorum pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos *aggressus* magnam partem eorum *concidit*: reliqui se fugae mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt.

<i>aggredior</i>	<i>attack.</i>	<i>occulto</i>	<i>conceal.</i>
<i>comminus</i>	<i>hand to hand.</i>	<i>pilum</i>	<i>javelin.</i>
<i>concido</i>	<i>slay.</i>	<i>pono</i>	<i>pitch.</i>
<i>deprehendo</i> ...	<i>catch.</i>	<i>procuro</i>	<i>rush forward.</i>
<i>gladius</i>	<i>sword.</i>	<i>reficio</i>	<i>refresh.</i>
<i>munio</i>	<i>protect.</i>	<i>rejicio</i>	<i>throw aside.</i>

19.—Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar cum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, *adjunctis Cisirhenanis* omnibus Germanis, esse in armis, Senones ad concilium non venire, a Treveris Germanos crebris *legationibus* sollicitari, *maturius* quam consuerat sibi de bello *cogitandum* pntavit. Itaque nondum hieme *confecta*, proximis quattuor coactis legionibus, de *improviso* in fines Nerviorum contendit et priusquam illi aut convenire aut *profugere* possent, magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto vastatisque agris in *deditioem* venire atque obsides sibi dare coegit. Eo celeriter *confecto* negotio, rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit.

<i>adjungo</i>	<i>add.</i>	<i>deditio</i>	<i>surrender.</i>
<i>Cisirhenanus</i> ...	<i>on this side of</i> <i>the Rhine.</i>	<i>de improvise</i> ...	<i>Exercise 3.</i>
<i>cogito</i>	<i>think.</i>	<i>legatio</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
<i>conficio</i>	<i>end, complete.</i>	<i>mature</i>	<i>early.</i>
		<i>profugio</i>	<i>take to flight.</i>

20.—At hostes ubi nostros equites conspexerunt, (quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam flumen, non redierant), nihil timentibus nostris quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant, impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt; quibus rursus resistentibus,

consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, *subfossis* equis compluribusque nostris *dejectis* reliquos in fugam *conjecerunt*, atque ita perterritos egerunt ut non desisterent priusquam in conspectum exercitus nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et septuaginta, in his *vir* fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, cujus *avus* in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat, *amicus* ab senatu nostro appellatus.

<i>amicus</i>	<i>friend.</i>	<i>dejicio</i>	<i>unhorse.</i>
<i>avus</i>	<i>grandfather.</i>	<i>subjodio</i>	<i>stab from beneath.</i>
<i>conjicio</i>	<i>put.</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>man.</i>

21.—Postridie ejus diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id oppugnare conatus, propter *latitudinem* fossae *murique altitudinem*, paucis defendentibus, *expugnare* non potuit. Castris munitis, quae ad oppugnandum usui erant, comparare coepit. Interim Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter aggere *jacto*, magnitudine *operum*, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de *deditione* mittunt. Caesar obsidibus acceptis armisque omnibus ex oppido *traditis* in *deditionem* Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos duxit.

<i>altitudo</i>	<i>height.</i>	<i>latitudo</i>	<i>width.</i>
<i>deditio</i>	Exercise 19.	<i>murus</i>	<i>wall.</i>
<i>expugno</i>	<i>take by storm.</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>siege works.</i>
<i>jacio</i>	<i>throw up.</i>	<i>trado</i>	<i>give up.</i>

22.—Interim hac *fama* ad Treveros *incredibili* celeritate de victoria Caesaris perlata, Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu *profugit* copiasque omnes in Treveros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus *circum* Samarobrivam hiemare constituit, et quod tanti motus Galliae *erstiterant*, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello *consultabant*, nuntios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant, et nocturna in locis *desertis* concilia habebant.

<i>circum</i>	<i>near.</i>	<i>habeo</i>	<i>hold.</i>
<i>consulto</i>	<i>deliberate.</i>	<i>incredibilis</i>	<i>extraordinary.</i>
<i>desertus</i>	<i>lonely.</i>	<i>profugio</i>	Exercise 19.
<i>exsisto</i>	<i>arise.</i>	<i>victoria</i>	<i>victory.</i>
<i>fama</i>	<i>report.</i>		

23.—1. Castra munire instituit, quo facilius repentinos hostium impetus sustineret.

2. Hac re cognita Caesar mittit complures equitum turmas eodem media nocte; imperat his, ut omnibus locis quam latissime vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrorem *inferant*.

3. Bellovaci autem defectione Aednorum cognita, manus cogere atque *aperte* bellum parare coeperunt.

4. Tum vero ex omnibus *urbis* partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant, repentino *tumultu* perterriti, cum hostem intra *portas* esse existimarent, sese ex oppido eiecerunt.

5. Ubi cuique aut locus silvestris aut palus impedita spem *praesidii offerebat*, consederat.

6. Tres nobilissimi Aedui capti ad Caesarem perducuntur, in his Cavarillus, qui post defectionem Litaviceii *pedestribus* copiis praefuerat.

7. Qua spe adducti Germani latius vagabantur, et in fines Eburonum pervenerant.

aperte.....openly.

infero.....cause.

offero.....hold out.

pedester.....infantry.

porta.....Exercise 8.

praesidiuni...protection.

tumultus.....uproar.

urbs.....city.

24.*—Ab his castris oppidum Remorum, nomine Bibrax, aberat millia passuum octo. Id magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die *sustentatum* est. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa *nobilitate* et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praefuerat, unus ex iis qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse. Eo media nocte Caesar *sagittarios et funditores* subsidio mittit. Quorum adventu hostes paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum *depopulati* omnibus *vicis* aedificiisque, quo adire potuerant, incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt, et *ab* millibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut *fumo* atque *ignibus significabatur*, amplius millibus passuum octo in *latitudinem* patebant.

✱

* This and the following exercises are based upon the *Bellum Britannicum*, not upon chap. 24, etc., of Book V.

<i>ab</i>at a distance of.	<i>nobilitas</i> ...rank.
<i>depopulor</i> ...lay waste.	<i>pateo</i>Exercise 13.
<i>fumus</i>smoke.	<i>sagittarius</i> ...archer.
<i>funditor</i> ...slinger.	<i>significo</i>indicate.
<i>ignis</i> ...fire.	<i>sustento</i>hold out.
<i>latitudo</i>Exercise 21.	<i>vicus</i>Exercise 5.

25.—Hostes ubi de *expugnando* oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se *fefellisse* intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum *iniquum* progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse, domum suam quemque reverti, et quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum *introduxissent*, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent. Ea re constituta secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac *tumultu* castris egressi sunt, nullo certo *ordine* neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire *properaret*, ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar cognita, *insidias* veritus, quod, qua de causa discederent, nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re, omnem equitatum qui hostes prosequerentur misit. Hi *novissimos* adorti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium *conciderunt*.

<i>concido</i>Exercise 18.	<i>introduco</i>lead in.
<i>ermugno</i>“ 21.	<i>novissimus</i>rear.
<i>fallo</i>disappoint.	<i>ordo</i>order.
<i>iniquus</i>Exercise 15.	<i>propero</i>hasten.
<i>insidiae</i>ambush.	<i>tumultus</i>Exercise 23.

26.—Quorum magno numero interfecto Crassus oppidum Sonitium oppugnare coepit. Illi eruptione *temptata* ubi nihil his rebus *profici* posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt seque in deditionem ut recipiat, petunt. Qua re impetrata arma *tradere* jussi faciunt. Atque in ea re omnium nostrorum *intentis* animis, alia ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperii tenebat, eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitiois *sublato*, cum ad arma milites *concurrissent* *vehementer*que ibi pugnatum esset, in oppidum repulsus est. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in fines Vocationum profectus est. Tum vero barbari *commoti*, quod oppidum et natura loci et manu munitum paucis diebus *expugnatum* cognoverant, legatos dimittere, *conjurare*, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt.

<i>commorco</i> ...alarm.	<i>proficio</i>effect, gain.
<i>concurro</i> ...run.	<i>tempto</i>Exercise 6.
<i>conjuro</i>Exercise IV. 37.	<i>tollo</i>raise.
<i>expugno</i>“ 21.	<i>trudo</i>Exercise 21.
<i>intentus</i> ...intent, occupied.	<i>vehementer</i>vigorously.

27.—Hoc bello confecto multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum transeundum. Diebus decem *ponte* effecto exercitus traducitur. Caesar ad *utramque* partem fluminis firmo praesidio relicto in fines Sugamborum contendit. At Sugambri fuga comparata finibus suis excesserant seque in silvas abdiderant. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus se in fines Ubiorum recepit, atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus si ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, posteaquam *pontem* fieri *comperissent*, concilio *habito* nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis *demigrarent*, liberos uxores suaeque omnia in silvis *deponerent*, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent: hic Romanorum adventum exspectare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar *comperit*, omnibus rebus iis confectis quarum rerum causa traducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germani metum *injiceret*, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, se in Galliam recepit pontemque *rescivit*.

comperiolearn.

demigroExercise 12.

deponoplace.

habeoExercise 22.

injiciocause, inspire.

ponsExercise 5.

rescindodestroy.

uterqueeach.

28.—Legionibus in plures civitates distributis, facillime inopiae frumenti sese *mederi* posse existimavit. Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas munitaque hiberna cognovissent, in Gallia morari constituit. Post dies circiter quindecim quam in hiberna ventum est, *initium* repentinae defectionis ortum est ab Eburo-nibus, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis erant. Qui cum frumentum in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari nuntiis *impulsi* subito magna manu ad castra oppugnatum venerunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque *ascendissent*, atque una ex parte equitibus emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, *desperata* re hostes suos ab *oppugnatione* reduxerunt.

ascendomount.

desperodespair of.

impelloinstigate.

initiumbeginning.

medeorrelieve(w.dat).

oppugnatioassault.

29.—His rebus permotus Q. Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, *interpretem* suum ad eum mittit *rogatum* ut sibi militibusque *parcat*. Ille appellatus *respondit*: si velit secum colloqui, *licere*. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum *negat*. Titurius quos tribunos militum *circum* se habebat et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi jubet, et, cum propius

Ambiorigem accessisset, jussus arma abjicere imperatum facit, suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim dum de *condicionibus* inter se *agunt*, paulatim *circumventus* interficitur. Tum impetu in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi.

<i>ago</i>	<i>treat.</i>	<i>licet</i> (impers.).	<i>it is permitted ;</i>
<i>circum</i>	Exercise 22.		<i>freely, might.</i>
<i>circumvenio</i> ...	" IV. 26.	<i>nego</i>	<i>say . not.</i>
<i>condicio</i>	<i>terms.</i>	<i>parco</i>	<i>spare (w. dat.)</i>
<i>interpretes</i>	<i>interpreter.</i>	<i>respondeo</i>	Exercise IV. 22.
		<i>rogo</i>	" IV. 37.

30.—Hac *victoria sublatu*s Ambiorix statim cum equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant ejus *regno* finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque sese subsequi jubet. Aduatucis *concitatis* postero die in Nervios pervenit, hortaturque ne sui in perpetuum liberandi *occasionem dimittant*: interfectos duos legatos magnamque partem exercitus *interisse* demonstret: nihil esse *negotii* subito legionem quae cum Cicerone hiemet *opprimere*. Facile hac oratione Nervii *persuadet*. Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis, quam maximas manus possunt cogunt, et de improvviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum *fama* de Titurii morte perlata. Nostri celeriter ad arma *concurrunt*, vallumque conscendunt. Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone litterae. Caesar acceptis litteris hora circiter undecima diei, statim nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, ejus hiberna aberant ab eo millia passuum viginti quinque; jubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat expectandam. Scribit Ciceroni se cum legionibus profectum celeriter *affore*; hortatur ut *pristinam virtutem retineat*.

<i>adsum</i>	<i>be at hand.</i>	<i>occasio</i>	<i>opportunity.</i>
<i>concurro</i>	Exercise 26.	<i>opprimo</i>	<i>crush, surprise.</i>
<i>concito</i>	<i>arouse.</i>	<i>persuadeo</i> ..	<i>persuade on (w. dat.)</i>
<i>dimitto</i>	<i>let slip.</i>	<i>regnum</i>	<i>kingdom.</i>
<i>fama</i>	Exercise 22.	<i>retineo</i>	<i>maintain.</i>
<i>intereo</i>	<i>perish.</i>	<i>tollo</i>	<i>pass, be elated.</i>
<i>negotium</i>	<i>difficulty.</i>	<i>victoria</i>	Exercise 22.

PART III.—EXERCISES IN RE-TRANSLATION INTO LATIN.

(Reprinted from *De Bello Gallico*, Books III. and IV.)

20.—1. He found out that the traders did not visit these islands. 2. Almost all the harbors are suitable. 3. He found out to whom they had furnished auxiliaries. 4. He thought that the traders could find out how large the harbor was. 5. Although the harbors were not suitable, he set out for the island. 6. He knew that the winters were early. 7. All this will be of great service. 8. He found out that all the tribes had these customs.

21.—1. He instructs Volusenus to find out these things. 2. Ambassadors came from the states which he had conquered that summer. 3. Commius, who was faithful to Cæsar, had visited these states on the previous days. 4. They themselves, with all the fleet, assembled as quickly as possible. 5. Him he orders (*jubeo*) to visit the states. 6. He orders (*impero*) the traders to come to him. 7. Having given hostages they return home. 8. He urges Volusenus to leave the ship. 9. He reported what they had promised. 10. Commius had been made king.

22.—1. He ordered about eight ships of war and a large number of transports. 2. They promised to make ready the ships which he had required. 3. While they were collecting the ships, ambassadors came from the Morini. 4. The rest of the ships could not carry over the legion. 5. After the two legions had been taken over, he gave the rest to Rufus to lead against the Morini. 6. When the hostages had been brought, he promised to receive them under his protection. 7. He left a garrison of two legions. 8. He does not wish either to wage war, or to delay for the purpose of collecting cavalry. 9. In the previous year he had had an opportunity of taking over the legions. 10. This happened very opportunely.

23.—1. As the cavalry had advanced to the higher ground, he ordered the rest of the soldiers to follow them. 2. He ordered the anchors to be raised. 3. We cannot throw weapons from the ship to the shore. 4. Thinking the shore suitable, they landed. 5. On the signal being given, they embarked and followed him. 6. He waited until he found a suitable tide for sailing. 7. About the ninth hour of the day he found out what was being done. 8. On the ninth day he ordered the tribunes to set sail from the farther harbor.

24.—1. They kept our men from leaping down. 2. Sending the charioteers in advance, they hurled their weapons more boldly. 3. The soldiers, burdened by their arms, leaped down from the ship. 4. The locality was unknown to our men, who did not show the same zeal as the enemy. 5. They had to advance into the water. 6. On account of the great difficulty, the rest of the forces cannot follow up the cavalry. 7. They were wont to use horses in their battles. 8. The enemy, dismayed by the size of the vessels, could not hurl their weapons.

25.—1. The soldiers were ordered to leap down. 2. As the soldier was leaping down, Cæsar noticed that the enemy had halted. 3. On the ships of war being removed a short distance, the enemy began to retreat. 4. He urged the soldiers not to betray the eagles to the barbarians. 5. He cried with a loud voice that he was willing to do his duty. 6. On account of the unusual kind of vessels, the matter turned out most favorably for Cæsar. 7. "Leap down, Cæsar," he said, "unless you wish to incur disgrace." 8. Our soldiers exhorted one another not to hesitate on account of the appearance of the barbarians.

26.—1. On the vessels being filled, he ordered aid to be sent to those who were in difficulty. 2. Whenever the enemy made an attack, Cæsar would order our men to keep their ranks. 3. Both sides were unable to leave their ships. 4. Whomsoever they attacked, they put to flight. 5. Making an attack, they surrounded the enemy. 6. Having reached the island, the cavalry landed from the ship. 7. Having attacked the enemy, they fought fiercely. 8. This alone is lacking. 9. He had manned the ships of war with the cavalry.

27.—1. On their promising to send ambassadors, they were ordered to send Commius back. 2. He complained because, after promising to send for hostages, they had seized Commius. 3. Having seized Commius and put him in chains, they had made war. 4. They said that they had sent for part of the hostages. 5. As soon as the enemy had done what he required, he forgave their indiscretion. 6. Sending Commius, the Atrebatian, in advance, he ordered the ambassadors to be seized and put in chains. 7. As they have sought peace and given hostages, their imprudence will be forgiven. 8. They seized Commius as he was landing from the ship.

28.—1. So great a storm arose that the vessels could not set out. 2. Having taken the cavalry on board, they had set sail for the continent. 3. Some vessels had been filled with the waves, others had been carried back to the island. 4. When

they were taking the cavalry on board, a light breeze sprang up. 5. The camp was reached on the fourth day. 6. The camp is very near the upper harbor. 7. The storm was so great that they put out to sea.

29.—1. The ships of war were being filled with the tide. 2. After the ships had been repaired, the army was carried over. 3. The same winter several ships were lost. 4. On the same day he caused corn to be provided. 5. The ships which had not been drawn up, were being tossed about by the storm. 6. Other vessels were wanting. 7. For several days it happened that the tides were very high. 8. As corn has not been provided, a fact which is unknown to Cæsar, we ought not to winter in Gaul. 9. It is generally agreed that ropes, anchors and other tackling are lacking.

30.—1. As cavalry was lacking to Cæsar, the camp was smaller. 2. The best thing to do is to lead across the legion and renew the war. 3. They had learned that Cæsar had brought the legion over without cavalry. 4. He began to form a conspiracy for the purpose of renewing the war. 5. They are confident that, if the matter is drawn out till winter, Cæsar will not make war. 6. Withdrawing his men gradually from Britain, he began to make war. 7. Understanding that our men had been prevented from returning, they departed secretly after Cæsar's return.

31.—1. Although the rest of the ships had been repaired, he could not sail very satisfactorily. 2. Suspecting that they would fail to give hostages, he ordered the ships to be repaired. 3. As the ships have been seriously damaged, timber and bronze cannot be brought to the continent. 4. He ordered the soldiers to use the corn. 5. Twelve ships had been repaired with the utmost zeal. 6. Having learned Cæsar's plans, they suspected that the rest of the ships had been lost. 7. When hostages had been given, they were ordered to bring in corn. 8. No one will cross over from Britain for the purpose of renewing the war.

32.—1. While the two cohorts were arming themselves, the enemy suddenly attacked the cavalry. 2. Observing that the enemy had marched in that direction, he ordered the legions to surround them. 3. Those who had been sent to reap the grain reported that the enemy had suddenly attacked them and surrounded them with their cavalry. 4. A larger cloud of dust than is usual is visible in the direction in which the legion marched. 5. Suspecting that the cohorts would follow, the barbarians had been ordered to conceal themselves in the woods.

6. He suspected that part of the barbarians kept coming to the camp. 7. Being ordered to lay aside their arms and not to hurl any weapon, they were alarmed. 8. Adopting this plan, they had set out with him. 9. When those who remained in the camp told Cæsar that the ranks had been thrown into disorder, he ordered the cavalry to be sent.

33.—1. They are accustomed to leap down from their horses and fight on foot. 2. Hurling their weapons, they threw the ranks into confusion. 3. Leaping down from their chariots, they betook themselves to their friends. 4. Leaving the battle, they would place their chariots so that they might hurl their weapons. 5. So great was the din of the wheels that the very charioteers were thrown into confusion. 6. The charioteer betook himself in safety to the cavalry. 7. They are so hard pressed by the cavalry and infantry that they are gradually leaving the field.

34.—1. While they were collecting the cavalry, Cæsar kept his men in camp. 2. Having done this, he sent out messengers and pointed out how great was the number of the enemy. 3. As the time was unfavorable the legions were led back to the camp. 4. He thought the time was favorable for bringing aid. 5. The Romans having been driven out, they thought an opportunity was afforded (them) of lending aid to the enemy. 6. Our men were kept in the camp for several days by the storms. 7. After joining battle, while the cavalry was occupied, an opportunity for throwing the infantry into confusion was given.

35.—1. On the day before all the buildings had been burned. 2. Although the enemy were defeated, they nevertheless escaped danger. 3. After slaying several, they burned all the buildings. 4. He sees that the enemy cannot endure the attack of our legions. 5. The legions which he had brought over joined battle. 6. The cavalry, of whom mention has been made above, having defeated the enemy, had betaken themselves to Cæsar. 7. It happened that Commius had brought over several legions.

36.—1. On the ambassadors being sent, he demanded hostages. 2. At midnight he reached the harbor in safety. 3. The weather being suitable they set sail the same night. 4. He did not think the hostages should be brought to the same harbor. 5. Having found two transports, the ambassadors had reached the continent. 6. As all the ships had been carried down, the enemy sent ambassadors to Cæsar to treat for peace.

37.—1. After the soldiers had landed, the enemy threw away their arms. 2. After slaying a large number of the enemy, they

had hastened to the camp. 3. After they had defended themselves for four hours, and several had been slain, they laid down their arms. 4. He was slain while fighting bravely in sight of his friends, after receiving several wounds. 5. Having subdued the Morini, Cæsar set out for Britain. 6. He ordered aid to be sent to the three hundred cavalry who were resisting the enemy's attacks. 7. When about six thousand soldiers had been slain, the enemy's cavalry came in sight. 8. Influenced by these things, he ordered the Morini to be surrounded, if they were unwilling to set out. 9. Leaving all the cavalry in the camp, he ordered his men to form a square and fight bravely.

33.—1. Renewing the war they betook themselves to the marshes. 2. As the enemy had neglected to send hostages and had hidden themselves in the woods, he led back the legions into the country of the Morini. 3. In former years they used to use the marshes and woods as a place of refuge. 4. As the rest of the Belgians had renewed the war, the Morini, against whom Cæsar had sent two legions, concealed themselves in the marshes. 5. He had sent Cotta with two legions against the rest of the Belgians. 6. As these states had not sent hostages, he led the legion out of winter quarters. 7. In former years the senate had not decreed a twenty days' thanksgiving.

(Reprinted from *De Bello Gallico*, Books V. and VI.)

1.—1. Cæsar left Italy for his winter quarters. 2. He is accustomed to put a lieutenant in charge of the legion. 3. He orders Cæsar to repair the old vessel. 4. They used a lower ship. 5. On account of the tides the waves were large. 6. Having learned all these things, he held the assizes. 7. He learned that the Pirustae were laying waste the neighboring provinces. 8. The soldiers whom he had demanded were assembling. 9. When he heard that the hostages had been brought, he set out for hither Gaul. 10. Ambassadors are sent to explain that the state will make amends.

2.—1. When the ships had been launched, he visited all the winter-quarters. 2. He orders those who have charge of the army to return. 3. He pointed out what had been done. 4. Within twenty days, thirty vessels had been equipped. 5. He leaves six hundred thousand soldiers and one thousand eight hundred ships. 6. This passage is very convenient. 7. He could not set out for these territories because there was the greatest scarcity of ships.

3.—1. He points out that this state is strong in infantry. 2. As soon as they revolted, he began to collect an army. 3. Learning of Caesar's approach, they prepared for war. 4. They pointed out what had been done among the Remi. 5. Having collected large forces of infantry and cavalry, they revolted from the Roman people. 6. This forest extends from the centre of Gaul to the River Rhine. 7. They are afraid lest the common people, influenced by some nobles, fall away and revolt from Caesar. 8. We were unwilling to desert Caesar, fearing that we could not easily keep the common people true to their allegiance. 9. The state is in your power, and if Caesar will grant permission, I will come to him, and entrust my fortunes to his protection.

4.—1. They know why he is summoned by the leading men. 2. He is annoyed at being compelled to bring hostages. 3. They thought that everything had been made ready. 4. Indutimarus had great influence among the leading men. 5. They urged Cingetorix to spend the summer among us. 6. It is very important that he should remain faithful. 7. Although he has remained faithful, he is unfriendly to the Treveri.

5.—1. As all the ships had been driven back, he was unable to set out. 2. He had learned that the rest of the hostages had reached Gaul. 3. Leaving the cavalry, which had assembled from the whole of Gaul, he set out with four legions. 4. The ships having been driven back by storms, and being unable to keep their course, had returned.

6.—1. Seeing that all hope was lost, he begged to be put to death. 2. Several report to Caesar that Dumnorix was indignant at this. 3. Being hindered by religious scruples, he does not venture to remain in Britain. 4. Having conferred the royal power upon Dumnorix he urged the Aedui to send ambassadors. 5. In accordance with the oath they sent ambassadors to gain their request. 6. He will take across to the continent all who are desirous of a change of government. 7. Being unaccustomed to sailing they fear being taken across to Gaul.

7.—1. Having sent the cavalry to bring them back, he returned home. 2. Learning their plans, he takes care that the folly shall go no further. 3. Having followed Dumnorix, they found out all his plans. 4. Without the knowledge of Dumnorix, the Aedui had decided that their departure must be postponed. 5. Having got suitable weather the cavalry had embarked in Cæsar's absence. 6. Thinking that his authority was being disregarded, he restrained Dumnorix by whatsoever means he could. 7. I am free and belong to a free state.

8.—1. Leaving two legions on the higher ground, he left the shore. 2. Having secured provisions, he set sail at sunset. 3. Large bands of the enemy had assembled to defend the shore. 4. He left in Britain the same number of legions with which he had set sail. 5. He will find out what is being done in that part of the island. 6. Although all the cavalry had hidden themselves, more than two thousand soldiers were in sight. 7. Having reached the island, they found that the enemy had left the heights the previous night. 8. He left two vessels to find out in what part of the island was the best landing place.

9.—1. After the battle had been begun, our forces caught sight of the mound which the enemy had thrown up. 2. Having followed the enemy too far, they received a few wounds. 3. Cæsar left the third legion to guard the camp. 4. He ordered the soldiers to cut down the trees and throw up a mound. 5. The barbarians began to hinder our men from fortifying the camp. 6. Having encamped in a suitable place, he ordered the cavalry to find out where the enemy had hidden themselves. 7. The forces had been repulsed because they had not formed a *testudo*. 8. He found out that they had put Atrius in command of the cavalry.

10.—1. On the previous day Atrius had been sent to announce that the ships were in sight. 2. They brought word that a great storm had arisen. 3. As almost all the ships have been wrecked, great loss has been received. 4. The ships which had not been able to withstand the violence of the storm were cast ashore.

11.—1. Recalling the cavalry, Cæsar orders the legions to return to the sea. 2. He wrote to Labienus to summon workmen and repair the ships. 3. Although the rest of the ships can be repaired, yet about forty have been lost. 4. Leaving the same garrison as before, he returned to the continent. 5. Labienus, whom he had placed in charge of the legion, had ordered as many workmen as possible to be chosen. 6. It is a matter of great labor, so that the ships cannot even be drawn up

on shore. 7. After spending ten days on the continent, he set out for the states on the coast. 8. The forces, on assembling, judged it best to hand over the chief command to Cassivellaunus.

12.—1. Those who were born in the island inhabit the interior. 2. Those who inhabit the coast began to make war. 3. The cold is less severe than in the interior. 4. They had crossed over from Gaul to till the land.

13.—1. Some think that the days are very short in these islands. 2. The other island, which we found was called Ireland, lies towards the west. 3. On the other side some smaller islands lie off the coast. 4. Bringing the ship to land, they saw that this side was shorter by half.

14.—1. Those who dwell in the coast-districts were more civilized. 2. They all have the head shaved. 3. They stain the skins, in which they are clad, a blue color. 4. They have nothing except milk and flesh.

15.—1. Driving the cavalry to the woods, they slay several. 2. They made an attack on the two legions so (*ita*) fiercely that our men were driven back. 3. Rushing out of the woods, they made an attack on our men. 4. Cæsar sent two legions to reinforce the cohort which was on guard. 5. Having burst boldly through the midst, they take up their position between the legions. 6. Two tribunes were slain while off their guard.

16.—1. Our men perceived that the enemy had leaped down from their chariots and were fighting on foot. 2. When our men left the standards, the enemy ventured to pursue them. 3. We perceived that they never fought in close order. 4. Having arranged outposts, they ventured to fight on foot. 5. This brings the same danger to those who are fighting and to those who are relieving them.

17.—1. Sending out the cavalry, they give no opportunity of either gathering together or departing. 2. When they had rallied from their flight they leaped down from their chariots. 3. Leaping down from their chariots, they suddenly made an attack on the cavalry which Cæsar had sent to pursue them. 4. When they had begun to forage, the enemy suddenly showed themselves. 5. Repelling the cavalry, they slew a large number of them.

18.—1. They observed that the river could be crossed on foot. 2. Having drawn up his forces he orders the cavalry to be sent in advance. 3. He learned that the legions had followed with such speed that the enemy had been unable to cross the river. 4. When he observed this, he ordered the forces to be drawn up.

5. Having come to the banks of the other river, which were protected by stakes, he sends forward all the cavalry.

19.—1. Having laid waste all the fields, he dismissed his forces. 2. He learned that Cæsar was marching with four legions. 3. He did not allow the legions to leave the line of march. 4. He will prevent our cavalry from laying waste the fields or doing harm to the people. 5. They learned that he had laid waste the fields and was going to send away the charioteers. 6. When he had gathered the cattle into wooded places, he allowed the soldiers to engage with the enemy's cavalry.

20.—1. He promises to protect them from wrong. 2. They ask (him) to come to that state. 3. Having demanded hostages, he promised to send them an army to protect them. 4. A young man whose father the Trinobantes had slain surrenders to him. 5. Having promised to send the corn, he demands hostages of the Trinobantes. 6. They sent ambassadors to Cæsar in Gaul to ask him to come quickly.

21.—1. After slaying a large number of the enemy, he set out for the purpose of attacking the town. 2. He learned from the Britons whom he had seized that the town was protected by a wall. 3. Another town, which is not far distant, is excellently fortified. 4. The Trinobantes, having been protected from all injury, send an embassy to Cæsar. 5. The Britons were accustomed to avoid an inroad. 6. He learns that many who have rushed out of the town have been seized.

22.—1. While the forces were being collected, messengers were sent to the regions which are near the sea. 2. He orders the kings to collect all their forces. 3. He ordered Commius the Atrebatian not to winter in Gaul. 4. Having attacked the naval camp, he decided to lead back his forces to the continent. 5. He orders his men to make a sally. 6. He perceived that the lands were being laid waste, and many losses received. 7. When they decided what to do, they forbade the soldiers to injure the leader of the Trinobantes. 8. The king who rules over Britain had decided to winter in the naval camp. 9. He understands that they have not paid the tribute to Cæsar.

23.—1. It happened that he had two ships, and that the equinox was near at hand. 2. It happened that the ships in which he had caused the army to be led back had been lost in a storm. 3. He decided to wait for the vessels which he had caused to be repaired. 4. On leading the army back to the sea, he found that the ships had been driven back. 5. As very few soldiers had been landed, he waited until (*ad*) the second watch. 6. He set

sail with all the ships, lest he should wait in vain for a calm. 7. A great calm followed, so that the ship, which had the sixty captives on board, was brought over in safety.

APPENDIX IV.

INDEX OF NOTEWORTHY POINTS OF SYNTAX.*

A. CASE CONSTRUCTIONS:

Nominative : in apposition, iv. 22, 1.—in predicate, iv. 32, 1 ; v. 11, 8 ; 13, 3 (twice) ; 14, 5 ; 17, 1.—of personal pronoun, iv. 25, 3 ; v. 13, 4 ; and *illi* often.

Genitive : (a) *partitive* ; w. neuters, iv. 21, 9 ; 22, 3 ; 32, 2 ; v. 1, 7 ; 2, 3 ; 7, 1 ; 10, 2 ; 22, 4 (twice).—w. *millia* often.—w. superlative, v. 3, 1 ; 15, 4 ; 20, 1.—in predicate, v. 7, 8.

(b) *subjective* ; v. 20, 3 ; 21, 1.

(c) *objective* ; iv. 22, 2 ; 28, 2 ; 32, 1 ; 37, 1 ; v. 15, 3 ; 19, 1 ; 19, 2.—w. adjectives, iv. 22, 1 ; 24, 4 ; v. 6, 1 ; 6, 3.—w. verb, v. 8, 6.

(d) *characteristic* ; iv. 22, 1 ; 38, 5 ; v. 2, 2 ; 2, 3 ; 5, 3 ; 12, 5 ; 16, 1 ; 18, 3 ; 23, 4.—in predicate, v. 6, 1 (twice) ; 11, 5 ; 13, 5 ; 13, 7.

(e) *price* ; iv. 21, 7 ; v. 4, 3.

Dative : (a) *purpose* ; iv. 29, 4 ; 31, 2 ; v. 1, 4 ; 9, 8 ; 15, 4.—combined w. dat. of *interest*, iv. 20, 2 ; 25, 1 ; 37, 2 ; v. 9, 1 ; 11, 7.

(b) *interest* ; iv. 22, 1 ; 25, 3 ; 26, 5 ; 29, 4 ; 30, 1 ; 34, 1 (?) ; 36, 2 ; v. 3, 5 ; 9, 1 ; 11, 9 ; 16, 3 (?) ; 20, 4.

(c) *apparent agent*, iv. 24, 2.

*The instances given are of two classes : first, constructions which occur but seldom in the text ; second, cases presenting some difficulty or peculiarity. For further study consult the notes, and the references there given.

(d) *with special verbs* ; iv. 21, 2 ; 21, 5 ; 21, 8 ; 22, 2 ; 25, 6 ; 26, 1 ; 27, 5 ; 28, 2 ; v. 1, 1 (twice) ; 1, 6 ; 2, 3 ; 3, 5 ; 4, 4 ; 7, 2 ; 9, 1 ; 11, 9 ; 16, 4 ; 22, 1 ; 22, 5 (twice).

(e) *with special adjectives* ; v. 9, 1 ; 12, 3.

Accusative : (a) *of time or space* ; iv. 23, 6 ; 34, 4 ; v. 7, 3 (twice) ; 9, 2 ; 10, 2 ; 11, 8 ; 13, 1 ; 13, 3 (but not v. 11, 6).

(b) *limit of motion* ; iv. 21, 6 ; v. 7, 5.

(c) *adverbial* ; v. 1, 3 ; 2, 2 ; 3, 1 ; 7, 2 ; 14, 1 ; 19, 3.

(d) *w. propius* ; iv. 28, 2.

Ablative : (a) *means* ; iv. 28, 3 ; 29, 2 ; 29, 4 ; 31, 3 ; v. 7, 1 ; 8, 4 ; 11, 2 ; 11, 4 ; 14, 2 ; 17, 1 ; 19, 1 (*quibus*) ; 19, 2 (twice).—*w. ulor* often, (in iv. 38, 2, *w.* double abl.)

(b) i. *time when* ; iv. 20, 1 ; v. 3, 6 ; 23, 6 ; and often with nouns expressing time ; (but not v. 1, 1, *consulibus* ; 8, 2, *lucē* ; 23, 6, *vigilia*).—ii. *time within which* ; iv. 27, 6 ; 37, 3 (?) ; v. 2, 2.

(c) *characteristic* ; v. 3, 4 ; 4, 4 ; 13, 2 ; 14, 3.

(d) *specification* ; v. 3, 1 ; 5, 3 ; 13, 1 ; 14, 2 ; 23, 4.

(e) *manner* ; iv. 27, 3 ; 31, 3 ; 33, 1 ; v. 2, 2 ; 6, 6 ; 16, 2 ; 16, 4 ; 18, 5 ; 23, 2.

(f) *accompaniment* ; iv. 24, 1 ; v. 9, 3.

(g) *comparison* ; iv. 37, 3 (?).

(h) *measure of difference* ; v. 13, 2 ; so *multo*, v. 4, 4., *nihilo*, v. 4, 3 ; 7, 3., and often *paulo* (e.g. iv. 23, 2.) —*hoc* and *eo* *w.* comparative, iv. 30, 1 ; v. 1, 2 ; 9, 1.

(i) *separation* ; iv. 21, 9 ; 30, 2 (twice) ; 34, 5 ; v. 6, 5 ; 11, 1.

(j) *place where* ; iv. 34, 2 (?) ; 35, 3 ; v. 15, 1 ; 18, 1 ; 19, 1.—*w. confido*, v. 17, 3.

(k) *cause* ; iv. 34, 1 ; 37, 1 ; v. 4, 4.

(l) *absolute* ; often *w.* perf. part. pass., giving time, motive, reason, etc.—=although, iv. 20, 4 ; 31, 3 ; v. 11, 2 ; 23, 3.—=if, iv. 30, 2.—*w.* pres. part., iv. 25, 3 ; v. 7, 7 ; 16, 3 (?).—*w.* noun or adj. as predicate, iv. 20, 1 ; 24, 2 ; 24, 3 ; 28, 1 ; 28, 3 ; 32, 5 ; 36, 2 (twice) ; v. 1, 1 ; 7, 5 ; 12, 6 ; 15, 3 ; 23, 3.—*w.* negative, v. 8, 4 ; 11, 6.—referring to object in acc., iv. 21, 6 ; v. 4, 3.—with one member omitted, v. 16, 3 (?).

B. MODAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

- (a) **Final or purpose clauses** (subj.): w. *ut* and *ne* often.—substantival; w. *ut* or *ne*, iv. 21, 2; 21, 6; 21, 8; 25, 3; 25, 5; v. 1, 1; 4, 2; 6, 3; 6, 4; 6, 5; 6, 6; 7, 2; 7, 3; 11, 4; 20, 3; 22, 1; w. *neu*, v. 22, 5.—*ut* omitted, iv. 21, 8; 23, 5.—w. *quo* and comparative, v. 3, 6.—w. *quominus* iv. 22, 4.—w. relative, iv. 21, 5; 22, 1; 38, 2; v. 1, 7; 1, 9; 9, 1; 10, 2; 20, 3.—w. *verecor*, v. 3, 5.
- (b) **Consecutive or result clauses** (subj.): w. *ut*, iv. 23, 3; 31, 3; 33, 2; 33, 3; v. 11, 2; 15, 1; 17, 2; 18, 5.—substantival, iv. 28, 2; 29, 1; 35, 1; v. 6, 5; 16, 4; 19, 3; 23, 3, 4.—w. *quin*, v. 2, 2.—w. *fore ut*, iv. 35, 1.
- (c) **Relative clause of characteristic** (subj.): iv. 21, 9 (?); 29, 4; 34, 4..
- (d) **Indirect Question** (subj.): iv. 20, 4; 21, 9; 23, 5; 34, 5; v. 2, 3; 3, 3; 4, 1; 8, 1; 9, 1.—deliberative question, v. 22, 4.
- (e) **Relative clauses**: often w. *qui*, or *ut*=as, regularly in indic.—in indirect form in subj., iv. 21, 8; 22, 1; 23, 5 (*postularent*); 27, 1; 32, 1 (twice); v. 1, 1; 6, 5; 6, 6; 7, 1; 11, 4; 21, 2.—in subj. by attraction, v. 23, 3; 23, 4.—in indic., although w. indirect narration, iv. 30, 1; 31, 1; 32, 2; 35, 1; v. 5, 2; 11, 4.—w. *quicumque* in indic., iv. 26, 1; in indirect form in subj., v. 7, 1. [See also under (a), (c), (g), (i)].
- (f) **Temporal clauses**: *ubi* and indic., iv. 25, 1; 26, 2 (frequentative); v. 9, 1.—*simul* (*atque*) and indic., iv. 26, 5; 27, 1; v. 3, 3.—*posteaquam* and indic., iv. 37, 4; v. 3, 5; 6, 4.—*dum*=while, and indic., iv. 22, 1; 32, 1; 34, 3; v. 22, 1.—*dum*=until, and final subj., iv. 23, 4.—*quoad*=until, and indic., v. 17, 3.—*priusquam*, and final subj., iv. 21, 1.—*cum* frequentative=whenever, and indic., iv. 33, 1; v. 19, 2; 21, 3; in v. 16, 2, in indirect form in subj.—*cum* and subj., iv. 25, 4; 25, 6; 26, 4; 28, 2; 32, 3; 37, 1; 37, 2; v. 1, 6; 2, 2; 10, 2; 16, 1; 17, 2; 18, 2; 22, 2; 23, 5; in v. 5, 4, in indirect form referring to the future.—*post...quam* and indic., iv. 28, 1.
- (g) **Causal clauses**: often w. *quod*, regularly in indic.—in indirect form in subj. iv. 22, 1; 27, 5; v. 6, 3 (twice;

diceret, exceptional); 10, 2; 16, 1; 16, 2.—w. *quoniam* in indirect form in subj. v. 3, 5.—w. *cum* and subj., iv. 28, 3; 29, 3; 30, 1; 31, 3; 32, 1; 38, 2; v. 17, 3; 22, 4.—w. relative and subj., iv. 21, 9 (?); 23, 5; v. 4, 3; 7, 7.

- (h) **Conditional clauses**: in direct form, *nisi* and indic., iv. 25, 3; v. 13, 4.—in indirect form, w. *si* or *nisi* and subj., iv. 20, 2 (twice); 33, 2; 34, 5; 35, 1; 37, 1; v. 1, 8; 3, 7; 7, 7.
- (i) **Concessive clauses**: w. *etsi* and indic. iv. 20, 1; 31, 1; 35, 1; v. 4, 1; 11, 5.—w. *cum* and subj., iv. 23, 2; 24, 3; 27, 3; 27, 5; v. 8, 6; 15, 4; 18, 5; 23, 6.—w. relative and subj., v. 4, 4.
- (j) **Infinitive**; i. complementary, very often; in iv. 21, 5, w. *polliceor*; in v. 1, 3; 7, 6, w. *impero*; in iv. 24, 1; v. 9, 6; 19, 2, w. *prohibeo*.—ii. acc. and infin., very often; in iv. 37, 1, after *nolo*; in iv. 23, 5: v. 2, 3; 9, 8, after *volo*; in v. 3, 6; 6, 5, introduced abruptly.—iii. substantival, iv. 30, 2; v. 11, 5; 12, 1: 12, 6; in v. 4, 4, in apposition.—iv. historical, v. 6, 5; 6, 6.
- (k) **Gerund**; acc. w. *ad*, iv. 23, 1; 23, 4; 29, 3; v. 5, 2.—gen. w. *causa*, v. 6, 2; 17, 2; 19, 2; w. other nouns, iv. 29, 2; v. 1, 2; 8, 4; 17, 3; 17, 4.—abl. w. *in*, iv. 32, 5.—*sui* (plur.) and gerund [?], iv. 34, 5; v. 17, 4.
- (l) **Gerundive**; (i.) gerundive construction; acc. w. *ad*, iv. 20, 2; 21, 1; 22, 3; 29, 4; 31, 2; 34, 2; v. 1, 2; 1, 4; 7, 6;—gen. w. *causa*; iv. 22, 1; 30, 2; v. 12, 2; 21, 3; w. other nouns, iv. 22, 2; 34, 5; v. 11, 8.—abl. w. *in*, iv. 27, 4; v. 19, 3.
 (ii.) passive periphrastic conjugation. iv. 22, 2; 24, 2; 36, 2; v. 7, 1; 7, 2; 8, 4.
 (iii.) w. *curo*, iv. 29, 2; v. 1, 1; 23, 4; w. *do*, iv. 22, 5.
- (m) **Supine**: in *um*, iv. 32, 1.—in *u*, iv. 30, 2.
- (n) **Participle**: *present*; iv. 25, 3; 26, 2, 4; 37, 1; v. 1, 1; 7, 7 (twice).—as substantive, v. 9, 8; 16, 1, 3.—*perfect*; as substantive, v. 16, 4; 20, 2.—predicative, iv. 23, 2; v. 2, 2.—referring to future, iv. 27, 6; v. 6, 5.—with force of present, v. 7, 3; and often (apparently) with verbs of thinking.

C. TENSES.

Present : historical pres. often ; w. primary sequence iv. 21, 2, 5, 8 ; w. secondary sequence, v. 1, 1 ; w. *dum*, see B. f.

Imperfect : as past progressive, iv. 29, 2 ; v. 3, 2.—conative, iv. 24, 1 ; v. 9, 6.—repeated or habitual action, iv. 25, 3 ; 26, 1, 2, 3, 4 ; 31, 2 ; v. 1, 5 ; 2, 4 ; 6, 6 ; 13, 4 ; 16, 3 ; 19, 1, 2 ; and often w. verbs of *thinking* or *knowing*.—imperf. subj. in indirect form for fut. indic. v. 5, 4.

Perfect : rendered by present, *consuevi*, iv. 29, 1 ; 33, 3 ; v. 1, 2 ; 7, 3 ; 21, 3 ;—in frequentative clauses, iv. 33, 1 ; v. 21, 3.—perf. subj. in consecutive clause, v. 15, 1.—in indirect form for fut. perf., = Eng. pres., v. 1, 8.

Pluperfect : rendered by past, *consueveram*, iv. 24, 1 ; v. 1, 1.—in frequentative clauses, iv. 26, 1 ; 26, 4 ; v. 19, 2.—in indirect form for fut. perf., = Eng. past, iv. 20, 2 ; 22, 1 ; 27, 1 ; 34, 5 ; 35, 1 ; v. 6, 6.—*usi fuerant*, iv. 38, 2.—*dispositas haberent*, v. 16, 4.

Future perfect : iv. 25, 3.

D. MISCELLANEOUS.

(a) impersonal passive : iv. 23, 2 ; 24, 2 ; 26, 1 ; 27, 4 ; 28, 1 ; 29, 4 ; 31, 3 ; 35, 1 ; v. 3, 3 ; 4, 3 ; 6, 1 ; 7, 2 ; 7, 9 ; 8, 5 ; 16, 1 ; 19, 3 (twice).

(b) *necesse est*, iv. 29, 3 ; *oportet*, iv. 29, 4 ; *interest*, v. 4, 3.

(c) passive=reflexive, iv. 32, 2. — *videor*, used personally, v. 9, 4 ; 11, 2.

(d) frequentative verbs : iv. 32, 1 ; v. 6, 4 ; 7, 8.

(e) contracted verbal forms : iv. 20, 2 ; 22, 1 ; 24, 1, 4 ; 27, 5 ; v. 1, 1 ; 8, 4 ; 21, 3 ; 23, 5.

(f) 3rd declension, abl. in *i* ; *continenti* often, but *continente*, v. 8, 1 ; *navi*, iv. 21, 9 ; 25, 5.—acc. in *im*, v. 18, 1.

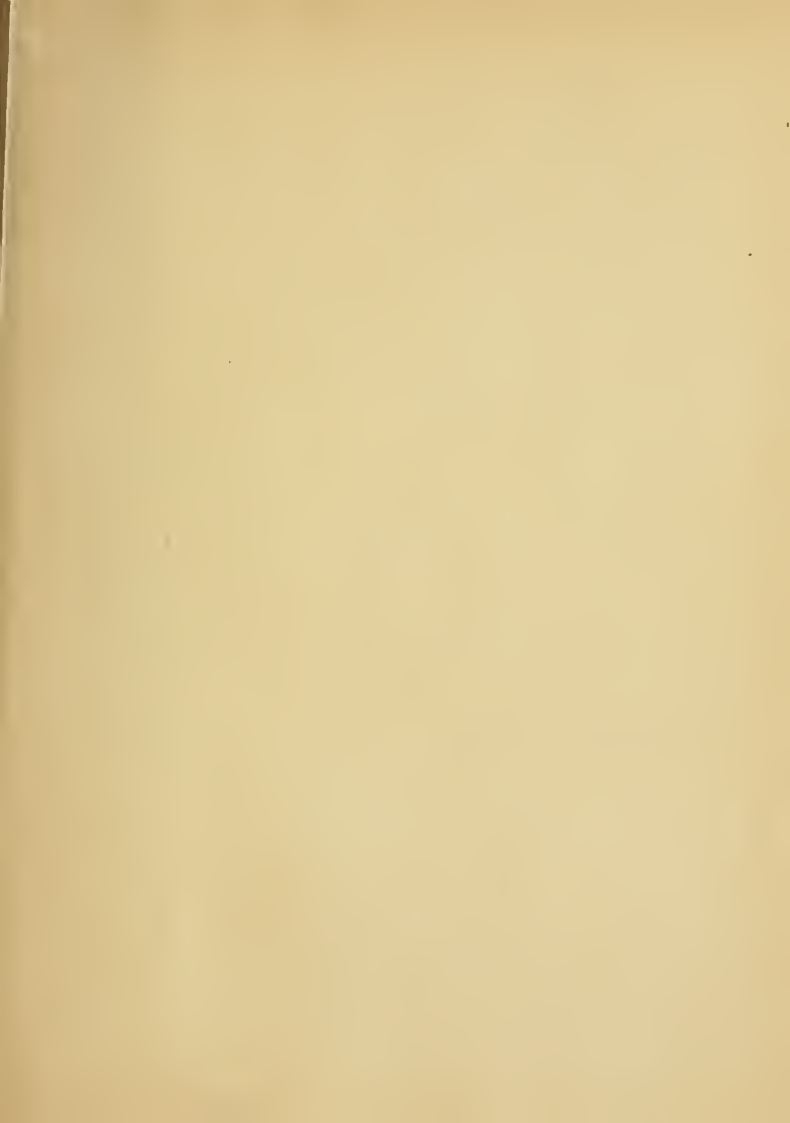
(g) *quam* w. superlative : iv. 21, 2 ; v. 4, 3 ; w. *possum*, v. 1, 1 ; 11, 4.

(h) comparative w. standard of comparison omitted : iv. 20, 4 ; 23, 2 ; 25, 1 ; 26, 5 ; 30, 1 ; 32, 3 ; 35, 2 ; v. 7, 2 ; 8, 2 ; 9, 8 ; 15, 2 ; 16, 1 ; 19, 2 (twice) ; 19, 3 ; 23, 5.

- (i) *amplius* w. numerals : iv. 37, 3 ; v. 8, 6.
- (j) distributive numerals : v. 6, 4 ; 14, 4 ; 22, 4.
- (k) indefinite pronouns and adjectives : *aliquis*, iv. 26, 2 ; 32, 2 ; *quis*, v. 7, 2 ; 14, 5 ; *quisque*, v. 8, 6 ; 12, 5 ; 14, 5 ; *quisquam*, iv. 20, 3 (twice) ; *quicumque*, iv. 26, 1 ; v. 7, 1 ; *uterque*, iv. 26, 1 (in plur.) ; *ullus*, iv. 29, 2 ; 32, 1 ; v. 23, 3 ; *nullus*, iv. 28, 2 ; v. 13, 6 ; *nonnulli*, v. 3, 5 ; 13, 3 ; 15, 2 ; 23, 2 ; *alius* repeated, iv. 26, 1 ; 28, 2 ; v. 16, 4 ; *inter se*, iv. 25, 5 ; 30, 1 ; v. 3, 2 ; 14, 4.
- (l) *ille* : iv. 24, 3 ; 27, 3, 6 ; 33, 2 ; 37, 2 ; v. 6, 3 ; 7, 8, 9 ; 9, 3 ; 13, 5 ; 15, 3, 6 ; 16, 2 ; 20, 4.
- (m) *is*=such : v. 18, 5.
- (n) relative pronoun and adjective : coordinating, often.—
= *is qui*, iv. 25, 3 ; 34, 3 ; v. 1, 2 (twice) ; 2, 3 ; 14, 1.
—w. antecedent repeated, iv. 32, 1 ; v. 2, 3 ; 12, 2 ; 13, 3.—w. antecedent following, v. 6, 5.—w. antecedent incorporated in rel. clause, iv. 21, 4 ; 29, 1 ; 31, 2.—see also B. a, c, e, g, i.
- (o) *idem qui* ; iv. 24, 4 ; 36, 4 ; v. 11, 2 ; 11, 7.—*par qui*, v. 8, 2.—*par atque*, v. 13, 2.
- (p) concord : v. 1, 2.—apposition, v. 4, 2 ; 20, 1.—synesis (or sense construction), iv. 36, 4.
- (q) *post diem quartum quam* : iv. 28, 1.
- (r) *cum...tum* : v. 4, 3.
- (s) *nobiscum* : v. 17, 5.
- (t) *ne...quidem* : v. 11, 6.
- (u) prepositional adjective phrases : iv. 21, 3 ; 33, 1 ; v. 13, 1, 4.

 ERRATA IN NOTES.

- p. 10, § 2, line 1. Under cum, read 'while' for 'as.'*
 " 10, " 2, " 6, and
 " 12, " 3, " 4. Read RC. 99. i. iii. HF. 204, 5.
 " 32, " 4, " 3. Read RC. 99. i. iv. HF. 196, 8.



H. H. Kington



